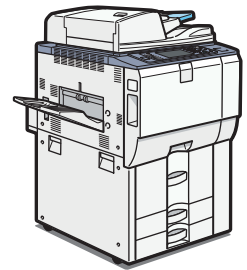


# e-STUDIO5530c PRO

# e-STUDIO7030c PRO

## Operating Instructions

# General Settings Guide



- 
- 1 Connecting the Machine
  - 2 System Settings
  - 3 Copier/Document Server Features
  - 4 Facsimile Features
  - 5 Printer Features
  - 6 Scanner Features
  - 7 Registering Addresses and Users for Facsimile/Scanner Functions
  - 8 Other User Tools
  - 9 Appendix

**Introduction**

This manual contains detailed instructions and notes on the operation and use of this machine. For your safety and benefit, read this manual carefully before using the machine. Keep this manual in a handy place for quick reference.

**Important**

Contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice. In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

**Notes:**

Some illustrations in this manual might be slightly different from the machine.

Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer.

Depending on which country you are in, your machine may include certain options as standard. For details, please contact your local dealer.

**Caution:**

Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual might result in hazardous radiation exposure.

Two kinds of size notation are employed in this manual. With this machine refer to the inch version.

---

# Manuals for This Machine

Refer to the manuals that are relevant to what you want to do with the machine.

## Important

- Media differ according to manual.
- The printed and electronic versions of a manual have the same contents.
- Adobe Acrobat Reader/Adobe Reader must be installed in order to view the manuals as PDF files.
- A Web browser must be installed in order to view the html manuals.

## About This Machine

Be sure to read the Safety Information in this manual before using the machine.

This manual provides an introduction to the functions of the machine. It also explains the control panel, preparation procedures for using the machine, how to enter text, and how to install the CD-ROMs provided.

## Troubleshooting

Provides a guide to solving common problems, and explains how to replace paper, toner, staples, and other consumables. Also refer to this manual for explanations on where to put the machine and how to maintain it.

## Copy / Document Server Reference

Explains Copier and Document Server functions and operations. Also refer to this manual for explanations on how to place originals.

## Facsimile Reference

Explains Facsimile functions and operations.

## Printer Reference

Explains Printer functions and operations.

## Scanner Reference

Explains Scanner functions and operations.

## Network Guide

Explains how to configure and operate the machine in a network environment, and use the software provided.

## General Settings Guide

Explains User Tools settings, and Address Book procedures such as registering fax numbers, e-mail addresses, and user codes. Also refer to this manual for explanations on how to connect the machine.

---

## Security Reference

This manual is for administrators of the machine. It explains security functions that you can use to prevent unauthorized use of the machine, data tampering, or information leakage. For enhanced security, we recommend that you first make the following settings:

- Install the Device Certificate.
- Enable SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) Encryption.
- Change the user name and password of the administrator using Web Image Monitor.

For details, see "Setting Up the Machine", Security Reference.

Be sure to read this manual when setting the enhanced security functions, or user and administrator authentication.

## PostScript 3 Supplement

Explains how to set up and use PostScript 3.

## Information

Contains general notes on the machine, and information about the trademarks of product names used in the manuals.

## Other manuals

- Manuals for DeskTopBinder Lite
  - DeskTopBinder Lite Setup Guide
  - DeskTopBinder Introduction Guide
  - Auto Document Link Guide

### ↓ Note

- Manuals provided are specific to machine types.
- The following software product is referred to using a general name:

Product Name	General name
DeskTopBinder Lite	DeskTopBinder

- The Help files for Web Image Monitor are stored on the supplied CD-ROM. Access them from the CD-ROM. You cannot download the Help files from our Web site.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

Manuals for This Machine.....	1
How to Read This Manual.....	10
Symbols.....	10
Display Panel.....	11
Accessing User Tools.....	12
Changing Default Settings.....	12
Quitting User Tools.....	13
Menu Protect.....	14

## 1. Connecting the Machine

---

Connecting to the Interfaces.....	15
Connecting to the Ethernet Interface.....	15
Connecting to the USB Interface.....	17
Network Settings Required to Use the Printer/LAN-Fax.....	18
Ethernet.....	18
Network Settings Required to Use Internet Fax.....	20
Ethernet.....	20
Network Settings Required to Use E-mail Function.....	22
Ethernet.....	22
Network Settings Required to Use Scan to Folder Function.....	24
Ethernet.....	24
Network Settings Required to Use Network TWAIN Scanner.....	26
Ethernet.....	26
Network Settings Required to Use Document Server.....	27
Ethernet.....	27
Using Utilities to Make Network Settings.....	29
Interface Settings.....	29
File Transfer.....	34
Connecting the Machine to a Telephone Line and Telephone.....	37
Connecting the Telephone Line.....	37
Selecting the Line Type.....	38

## 2. System Settings

---

General Features.....	39
Output Tray Settings.....	43

---

Tray Paper Settings.....	44
Timer Settings.....	54
Interface Settings.....	57
Network.....	57
Print List.....	60
File Transfer.....	62
Administrator Tools.....	68
Programming the LDAP server.....	77
Programming the LDAP server.....	77
Changing the LDAP server.....	81
Deleting the LDAP server.....	81
Programming the Realm.....	83
Programming the Realm.....	83
Changing the Realm.....	84
Deleting the Realm.....	85
System Settings on Main and Sub-machines.....	86
General Features.....	86
Tray Paper Settings.....	87
Timer Settings.....	89
Administrator Tools.....	90
<b>3. Copier/ Document Server Features</b>	
General Features.....	93
Reproduction Ratio.....	98
Edit.....	100
Stamp.....	106
Background Numbering.....	106
Preset Stamp.....	106
User Stamp.....	108
Date Stamp.....	109
Page Numbering.....	110
Stamp Text.....	112
Input/Output.....	114
Adjust Color Image.....	117

---

Settings for the Document Server.....	118
Copier/Document Server Features on Main and Sub-machines.....	120
General Features.....	120
Reproduction Ratio.....	121
Edit.....	122
Stamp.....	124
Input/Output.....	127
Adjust Color Image.....	128

#### **4. Facsimile Features**

---

General Settings.....	129
Scan Settings.....	132
Send Settings.....	133
Reception Settings.....	136
Initial Settings.....	141
Reception File Setting.....	147
Reception Report e-mail.....	148
SMTP Reception File Delivery Settings.....	149
Program / Change / Delete Scan Size.....	152
Deleting a Scan Size.....	153
Registering Fax Information.....	154
Registering Fax Information.....	155
Changing Fax Information.....	156
Deleting Fax Information.....	157
Forwarding.....	158
Programming an End Receiver.....	158
Quitting the Forwarding Function.....	161
Forwarding Mark.....	161
Parameter Settings.....	163
User Parameter List.....	163
Changing the User Parameters.....	171
Special Senders to Treat Differently.....	173
Authorized Reception.....	174
Reception File Print Quantity.....	174

---

Forwarding.....	175
Print 2 Sided.....	175
Memory Lock.....	175
Paper Tray.....	176
Programming/Changing Special Senders.....	176
Authorized Reception per Sender.....	178
Reception File Print Qty per Sender.....	178
Forwarding per Sender.....	179
Print 2 Sided per Sender.....	181
Memory Lock per Sender.....	182
Paper Tray per Sender.....	182
Programming Initial Set Up of a Special Sender.....	182
Deleting a Special Sender.....	185
Box Settings.....	186
Programming/Changing Personal Boxes.....	186
Deleting Personal Boxes.....	190
Programming/Changing Information Boxes.....	191
Deleting Information Boxes.....	193
Programming/Changing Transfer Boxes.....	194
Deleting Transfer Boxes.....	198
Printing the Box List.....	199

## 5. Printer Features

---

List / Test Print.....	201
Printing the Configuration Page.....	202
Maintenance.....	204
System.....	205
Host Interface.....	209
PCL Menu.....	210
PS Menu.....	212
PDF Menu.....	213

## 6. Scanner Features

---

General Settings.....	215
Scan Settings.....	217



---

Send Settings.....	219
--------------------	-----

## **7. Registering Addresses and Users for Facsimile/Scanner Functions**

---

Address Book.....	221
Managing names in the Address Book.....	224
Sending fax by Quick Dial.....	224
Sending e-mail by Quick Dial.....	225
Sending received fax documents or scanned files to a shared folder directly.....	225
Preventing unauthorized user access to shared folders from the machine.....	225
Managing users and machine usage.....	225
Registering Names.....	227
Registering Names.....	227
Changing a Registered Name.....	228
Deleting a Registered Name.....	229
Authentication Information.....	231
Registering a User Code.....	231
Changing a User Code.....	233
Deleting a User Code.....	234
Displaying the Counter for Each User.....	235
Printing the Counter for Each User.....	236
Printing the Counter for All Users.....	237
Clearing the Number of Prints.....	238
Fax Destination.....	240
Fax Destination.....	242
IP-Fax Destination.....	248
E-mail Destination.....	255
Registering an E-mail Destination.....	255
Changing an E-mail Destination.....	257
Deleting an E-mail Destination.....	258
Registering Folders.....	260
Using SMB to Connect.....	260
Using FTP to Connect.....	266
Using NCP to Connect.....	271
Registering Names to a Group.....	278

---

Registering a Group.....	278
Adding a Group to Another Group.....	281
Displaying Names Registered in a Group.....	282
Removing a Name from a Group.....	283
Deleting a Group Within Another Group.....	284
Changing a Group Name.....	285
Deleting a Group.....	286
Registering a Protection Code.....	288
Registering a Protection Code to a Single User.....	288
Registering a Protection Code to a Group User.....	289
Registering SMTP and LDAP Authentication.....	291
SMTP Authentication.....	291
LDAP Authentication.....	292

## 8. Other User Tools

---

Maintenance.....	295
Changing the Display Language.....	296
Inquiry.....	297
Counter.....	299
Displaying the Total Counter.....	299

## 9. Appendix

---

Copyrights.....	301
expat.....	301
NetBSD.....	301
Sablotron.....	303
JPEG LIBRARY.....	304
SASL.....	304
MD4.....	305
MD5.....	305
Samba (Ver 3.0.4).....	305
RSA BSAFE®.....	306
Open SSL.....	306
Open SSH.....	308
Open LDAP.....	312

---

Heimdal.....	313
IPS™ print language emulations.....	313
<b>INDEX</b> .....	315

---

# How to Read This Manual

---

## Symbols

---

This manual uses the following symbols:

### **WARNING**

Indicates important safety notes.

Ignoring these notes could result in serious injury or death. Be sure to read these notes. They can be found in the "Safety Information" section of About This Machine.

### **CAUTION**

Indicates important safety notes.

Ignoring these notes could result in moderate or minor injury, or damage to the machine or to property. Be sure to read these notes. They can be found in the "Safety Information" section of About This machine.

### **Important**

Indicates points to pay attention to when using the machine, and explanations of likely causes of paper misfeeds, damage to originals, or loss of data. Be sure to read these explanations.

### **Note**

Indicates supplementary explanations of the machine's functions, and instructions on resolving user errors.

### **Reference**

This symbol is located at the end of sections. It indicates where you can find further relevant information.

[ ]

Indicates the names of keys that appear on the machine's display panel.

[ ]

Indicates the names of keys on the machine's control panel.

# Display Panel

The display panel shows machine status, error messages, and function menus.

The function items displayed serve as selector keys. You can select or specify an item by lightly pressing it.

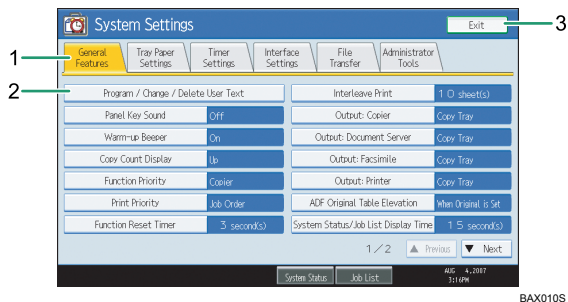
When you select or specify an item on the display panel, it is highlighted like **Program / Change**. Keys appearing as **OK** cannot be used.

## ★ Important

- A force or impact of more than 30 N (about 3 kgf) will damage the display panel.

To display the following screen, press the [User Tools/Counter] key to display the User Tools menu, and then press [System Settings].

Using the System Settings menu screen as an example, this section explains how to use the machine's display panel.



1. The menu tabs for various settings appear. To display the setting you want to specify or change, press the appropriate menu tab.
2. A list of settings appears. To specify or change a setting, press the appropriate key in the list.
3. Press this to quit the User Tools menu.

---

# Accessing User Tools

This section describes how to access User Tools menu.

User Tools allow you to change or set defaults.

## ↓ Note

- Operations for system settings differ from normal operations. Always quit User Tools when you have finished.
- Any changes you make with User Tools remain in effect even if the main power switch or operation switch is turned off, or the [Energy Saver] or [Clear Modes] key is pressed.

## 📖 Reference

- p.13 "Quitting User Tools"

---

## Changing Default Settings

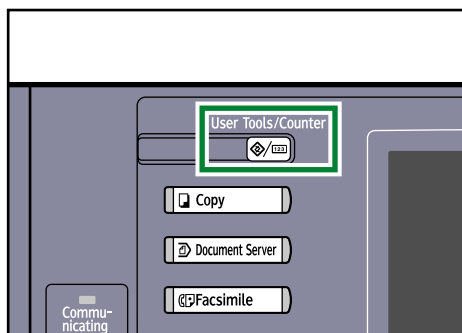
---

This section describes how to change the settings of User Tools.

## ★ Important

- If Administrator Authentication Management is specified, contact your administrator.

### 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



### 2. Select the menu.

To change the System Settings, press [System Settings].

To change the Copier/Document Server Features, press [Copier / Document Server Features].

To change the Facsimile Features, press [Facsimile Features].

To change the Printer Features, press [Printer Features].

To change the Scanner Features, press [Scanner Features].

To adjust color registration or gradation, press [Maintenance].

---

To change the language used on the display, press [Español].

To check the telephone number to contact for repairs, or to order consumables, press [Inquiry].

To check the counter, press [Counter].

**3. Select the user tool you want to change.**

**4. Change settings by following instructions on the display, and then press [OK].**

**Note**

- To cancel changes made to settings and return to the initial display, press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- For details about specifying System Settings, see "System Settings".
- For details about specifying Copier/Document Server Features, see "Copier/Document Server Features".
- For details about specifying Facsimile Features, see "Facsimile Features".
- For details about specifying Printer Features, see "Printer Features".
- For details about specifying Scanner Features, see "Scanner Features".
- For details about specifying other settings such as adjusting color registration, adjusting gradation, changing the language, checking inquiry and counter, see "Other User Tools".

**Reference**

- p.39 "System Settings"
- p.93 "Copier/Document Server Features"
- p.129 "Facsimile Features"
- p.201 "Printer Features"
- p.215 "Scanner Features"
- p.295 "Other User Tools"

---

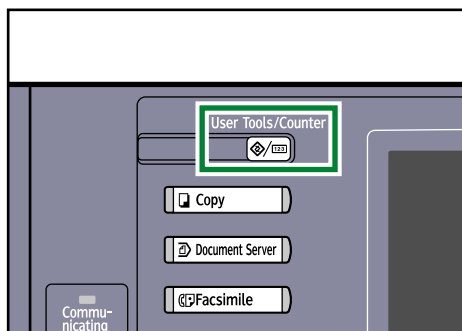
## Quitting User Tools

---

This section describes how to change the settings of User Tools.

---

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



**Note**

- You can also quit User Tools by pressing [Exit].

---

## Menu Protect

---

Using Menu Protect, you can prevent unauthenticated users from changing the user tools. Menu Protect can be specified for each of the following user tools menus.

- Copier / Document Server Features
- Facsimile Features
- Printer Features
- Scanner Features

For details, consult your administrator.



# 1. Connecting the Machine

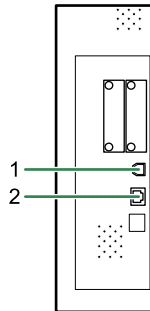
This chapter describes how to connect the machine to the network and specify the network settings.

## Connecting to the Interfaces

This section explains how to identify the machine's interface and connect the machine according to the network environment.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- A network interface cable with a ferrite core must be used for RF interference suppression.



#### 1. USB2.0 port

Port for connecting the USB2.0 interface cable

#### 2. 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX port

Port for connecting the 10BASE-T or 100BASE-TX cable

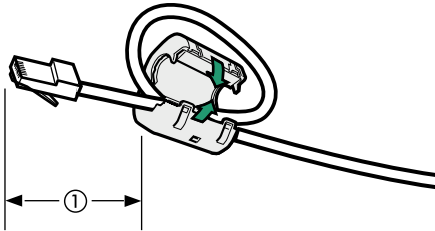
## Connecting to the Ethernet Interface

This section describes how to connect Ethernet interface cable to the Ethernet interface.

### ★ Important

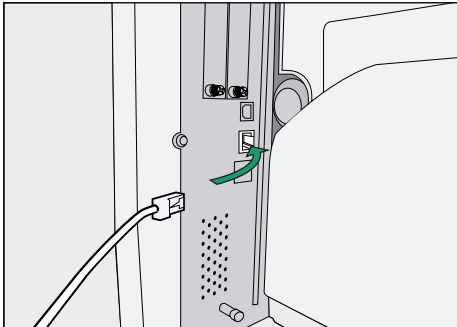
- If the main power switch is on, turn it off.
- Use the following Ethernet cables.
  - Unshielded Twisted Pair Cable (UTP) or Shielded Twisted Pair Cable (STP) and Category type 5 or more

1. A ferrite core for the Ethernet interface cable is supplied with this machine. Make a loop in the cable about 3 cm (1.2 inch) (1) from the machine end of the cable. Attach the ferrite core.



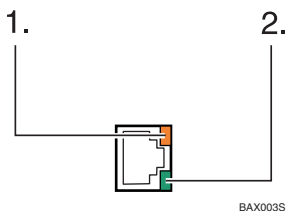
BBM011S

2. Make sure the main power switch of the machine is off.
3. Connect the Ethernet interface cable to the 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX port.



BAW013S

4. Connect the other end of the Ethernet interface cable to a network connection device such as a hub.
5. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.



BAX003S

1. Indicator (yellow)

When 100BASE-TX is operating, the LED is lit yellow. When 10BASE-T is operating, it is turned off.

2. Indicator (green)

When 10BASE-T is operating, the LED is lit green. When 100BASE-TX is operating it is turned off.

↓ **Note**

- For details about how to turn on the main power switch, see "Turning On the Power", About This Machine.
- For details about installing the printer driver, see "Preparing the Machine", Printer Reference.

1

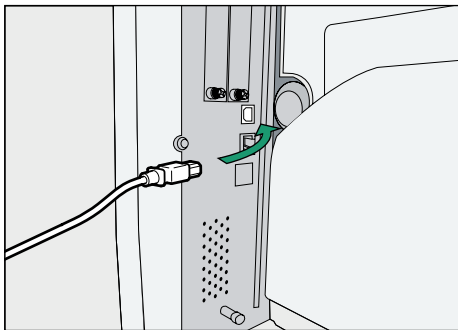
## Connecting to the USB Interface

This section describes how to connect the USB2.0 interface cable to the USB2.0 port.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used for connections to a host computer (and/or peripheral) in order to meet emission limits.

#### 1. Connect the USB2.0 interface cable to the USB2.0 port.



BAW014S

#### 2. Connect the other end to the USB2.0 port on the host computer.

↓ **Note**

- This machine does not come with a USB interface cable. Make sure you purchase the appropriate cable for the machine and your computer.
- The USB2.0 interface board is supported by Windows Me / 2000 / XP, Windows Server 2003, 2008, Mac OS X 10.3.3 or higher.
  - For Windows Me:
 

Make sure to install "USB Printing Support". When used with Windows Me, only a speed equal to that of USB1.1 is possible.
  - For Mac OS:
 

To use Macintosh, the machine must be equipped with the optional PostScript 3 unit. When used with Mac OS X 10.3.3 or higher, a transfer speed of USB2.0 is supported.
- For details about installing the printer driver, see "Preparing the Machine", Printer Reference.

# Network Settings Required to Use the Printer/ LAN-Fax

1

This section lists the network settings required for using the printer or LAN-Fax function.

## ★ Important

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.

## Ethernet

This section lists the settings required for using the printer or LAN-Fax function with an Ethernet connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	NCP Delivery Protocol	As required
Interface Settings/Network	NW Frame Type	As required
Interface Settings/Network	SMB Computer Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	SMB Work Group	As required

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Ethernet Speed	As required
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL/TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine Name	As required

#### ↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].

#### 📖 Reference

- p.57 "Interface Settings"

# Network Settings Required to Use Internet Fax

This section lists the network settings required for using Internet Fax.

## ★ Important

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.

## Ethernet

This section lists the settings required for using Internet Fax with an Ethernet connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings" and "File Transfer".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Ethernet Speed	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL/TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
File Transfer	SMTP Server	Necessary
File Transfer	SMTP Authentication	As required

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
File Transfer	POP before SMTP	As required
File Transfer	Reception Protocol	As required
File Transfer	POP3 / IMAP4 Settings	As required
File Transfer	Administrator's E-mail Address	As required
File Transfer	E-mail Communication Port	Necessary
File Transfer	E-mail Reception Interval	As required
File Transfer	Max. Reception E-mail Size	As required
File Transfer	E-mail Storage in Server	As required
File Transfer	Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message	As required
File Transfer	Fax E-mail Account	Necessary

#### ↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- SMTP Server and Fax E-mail Account must be specified in order to send Internet Fax.
- When POP before SMTP is set to [On], also make settings for Reception Protocol and POP3 / IMAP4 Settings.
- When SMTP Authentication is set to [On], also make setting for Administrator's E-mail Address.
- POP3 / IMAP4 Settings, E-mail Communication Port, and Fax E-mail Account must be specified in order to receive Internet Fax.
- When setting POP before SMTP to [On], check POP3 port number in E-mail Communication Port.

#### 📖 Reference

- p.57 "Interface Settings"
- p.62 "File Transfer"

# Network Settings Required to Use E-mail Function

1

This section lists the network settings required for sending e-mail.

## ★ Important

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.

## Ethernet

This section lists the settings required for sending e-mail with an Ethernet connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings" and "File Transfer".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Ethernet Speed	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL/TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
File Transfer	SMTP Server	Necessary
File Transfer	SMTP Authentication	As required
File Transfer	POP before SMTP	As required
File Transfer	Reception Protocol	As required



Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
File Transfer	POP3 / IMAP4 Settings	As required
File Transfer	Administrator's E-mail Address	As required
File Transfer	E-mail Communication Port	As required
File Transfer	Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message	As required
File Transfer	Scanner Resend Interval Time	As required
File Transfer	Number of Scanner Resends	As required

#### Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- When POP before SMTP is set to [On], also make settings for Reception Protocol and POP3 / IMAP4 Settings.
- When setting POP before SMTP to [On], check POP3 port number in E-mail Communication Port.

#### Reference

- p.57 "Interface Settings"
- p.62 "File Transfer"

# Network Settings Required to Use Scan to Folder Function

1

This section lists the network settings required for sending files.

## ★ Important

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.

## Ethernet

This section lists the settings required for sending files with an Ethernet connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings" and "File Transfer".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Ethernet Speed	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL/TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
File Transfer	Default User Name / Password (Send)	As required
File Transfer	Scanner Resend Interval Time	As required
File Transfer	Number of Scanner Resends	As required

 **Note**

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].

 **Reference**

- p.57 "Interface Settings"
- p.62 "File Transfer"

# Network Settings Required to Use Network TWAIN Scanner

This section lists the network settings required for using the TWAIN Scanner under the network environment.

## ★ Important

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.

## Ethernet

This section lists the settings required for using the network TWAIN Scanner with an Ethernet connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Ethernet Speed	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL/TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required

## ↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].

## 📖 Reference

- p.57 "Interface Settings"

# Network Settings Required to Use Document Server

1

This section lists the settings required for using the Document Server function under the network environment.

## ★ Important

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.

## Ethernet

This section lists the settings required for using the Document Server function with an Ethernet connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Ethernet Speed	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL/TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required

**Note**

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- When both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.

**Reference**

- p.57 "Interface Settings"

# Using Utilities to Make Network Settings

This section describes how to make network settings using utilities.

You can also specify network settings using utilities such as Web Image Monitor, SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, and telnet.

## ↓ Note

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.
- For details about using Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor", Network Guide.
- For details about using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, see "Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin", Network Guide.
- For details about using telnet, see "Remote Maintenance", Network Guide.

## Interface Settings

This section describes how to make Interface settings using utilities.

Change settings by using Web Image Monitor, SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, and telnet.

### [Network] → [Machine IPv4 Address] → [Auto-Obtain (DHCP)]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

### [Network] → [Machine IPv4 Address] → [Specify] → "IPv4 Address"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

### [Network] → [Machine IPv4 Address] → [Specify] → "Sub-net Mask"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

### [Network] → [IPv4 Gateway Address]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Machine IPv6 Address] → "Manual Configuration Address"**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [IPv6 Gateway Address]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [DNS Configuration] → [Auto-Obtain (DHCP)]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [DNS Configuration] → [Specify] → "DNS Server 1-3"**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [DDNS Configuration]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Domain Name] → [Auto-Obtain (DHCP)]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Domain Name] → [Specify] → "Domain Name"**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.



**[Network] → [WINS Configuration] → [On] → "Primary WINS Server"**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [WINS Configuration] → [On] → "Secondary WINS Server"**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [WINS Configuration] → [On] → "Scope ID"**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [WINS Configuration] → [Off]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Effective Protocol] → "IPv4"**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: You can specify the TCP/IP settings if SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin is communicating with the machine using IPX/SPX.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Effective Protocol] → "IPv6"**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Effective Protocol] → "NetWare"**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: You can specify the IPX/SPX settings if SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin is communicating with the machine using TCP/IP.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Effective Protocol] → "SMB"**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Effective Protocol] → "AppleTalk"**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [NCP Delivery Protocol] → [IPX Priority]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [NCP Delivery Protocol] → [TCP / IP Priority]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [NCP Delivery Protocol] → [IPX Only]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [NCP Delivery Protocol] → [TCP / IP Only]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [NW Frame Type] → [Auto Select]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [NW Frame Type] → [Ethernet II]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [NW Frame Type] → [Ethernet 802.2]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [NW Frame Type] → [Ethernet 802.3]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [NW Frame Type] → [Ethernet SNAP]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [SMB Computer Name]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [SMB Work Group]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Ethernet Speed]**

- Web Image Monitor: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Ping Command]**

- Web Image Monitor: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Permit SNMPv3 Communication] → [Encryption Only]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Permit SNMPv3 Communication] → [Encryption / Cleartext]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Permit SSL / TLS Communication] → [Ciphertext Only]**

- Web Image Monitor: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Permit SSL / TLS Communication] → [Ciphertext Priority]**

- Web Image Monitor: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Permit SSL / TLS Communication] → [Ciphertext / Cleartext]**

- Web Image Monitor: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Host Name]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

**[Network] → [Machine Name]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

---

## File Transfer

---

This section describes how to make File Transfer settings using utilities.

Change settings by using Web Image Monitor, SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, and telnet.

**[File Transfer] → [SMTP Server]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [SMTP Authentication]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [POP before SMTP]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [Reception Protocol] → [POP3]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [Reception Protocol] → [IMAP4]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [Reception Protocol] → [SMTP]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [POP3 / IMAP4 Settings]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [Administrator's E-mail Address]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [E-mail Communication Port]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [E-mail Reception Interval]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [Max. Reception E-mail Size]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [E-mail Storage in Server]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [Default User Name / Password (Send)]**

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [Fax E-mail Account]**

- Web Image Monitor: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [Scanner Resend Interval Time]**

- Web Image Monitor: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

**[File Transfer] → [Number of Scanner Resends]**

- Web Image Monitor: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

# Connecting the Machine to a Telephone Line and Telephone

1

This section describes how to connect the machine to the telephone lines and select the line type.

## Connecting the Telephone Line

To connect the machine to a telephone line, use a snap-in modular type connector.

### ⚠ CAUTION

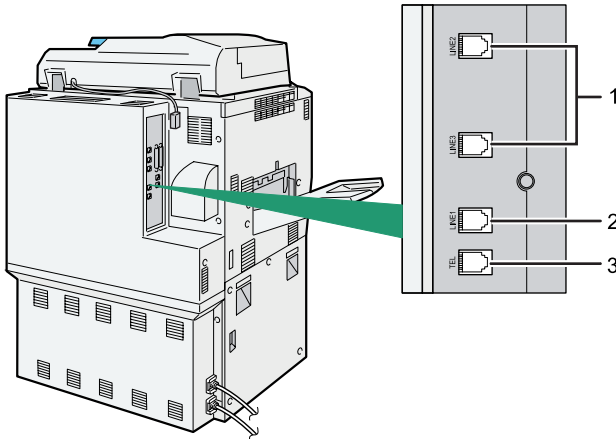
- To reduce the risk of fire, use only No. 26 AWG or larger telecommunication line cord.

### ⚠ ATTENTION

Pour réduire le risque d'incendie, utiliser uniquement des conducteurs de télécommunications 26 AWG ou de section supérieure.

### ★ Important

- Make sure the connector is the correct type before you start.



BAX002S

1. Extra G3 interface unit connector
2. G3 interface unit connector
3. External telephone connector

---

## Selecting the Line Type

---

1

Select the line type to which the machine is connected. There are two types: tone and pulse dial.

Select the line type using Administrator Tools.

 **Note**

- This function is not available in some regions.

 **Reference**

- p.141 "Initial Settings"



## 2. System Settings

This chapter describes user tools in the System Settings menu. For details on how to access System Settings, see "Accessing User tools".

### General Features

2

This section describes the user tools in the General Features menu under System Settings.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

#### Program / Change / Delete User Text

You can register text phrases you often use when specifying settings, such as ".com" and "Regards".

You can register up to 40 entries.

- Program / Change
  1. Press [System Settings].
  2. Check that [General Features] is selected.
  3. Press [Program / Change / Delete User Text].
  4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
  5. Select the user text you want to change.
    - To program new user text, press [Not Programmed].
  6. Enter the user text, and then press [OK].
    - Enter the user text using up to 80 characters.
  7. Press [Exit].
  8. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- Delete
  1. Press [System Settings].
  2. Check that [General Features] is selected.
  3. Press [Program / Change / Delete User Text].
  4. Press [Delete].
  5. Select the user text you want to delete.
  6. Press [Yes].
  7. Press [Exit].
  8. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Panel key Sound

The beeper (key tone) sounds when a key is pressed.

The default setting is **On**.

### **Warm-Up Beeper (copier/Document Server)**

You can have the beeper sound when the machine becomes ready to copy after leaving Energy Saver mode, or when the power is turned on.

The default setting is **On**.

If the Panel Tone setting is [Off], the beeper does not sound, whatever the Warm Up Notice setting.

### **Copy Count Display (copier/Document Server)**

The copy counter can be set to show the number of copies made (count up) or the number of copies yet to be made (count down).

The default setting is **Up**.

### **Function Priority**

Specify the mode to be displayed immediately after the operation switch is turned on, or when System Reset mode is turned on.

The default setting is **Copier**.

### **Print Priority**

Print Priority is given to the mode selected.

The default setting is **Display Mode**.

### **Function Reset Timer**

You can set the length of time the machine waits before changing modes when using the multi-access function.

This is useful if you are making many copies and have to change settings for each copy. If you set a longer reset period, you can prevent interruption from other functions.

The default setting is **Set Time**.

When you select [Set Time], enter the time (3-30 seconds, in 1 second increments) using the number keys.

The default setting for Function Reset Time is **3 second(s)**.

The Function Reset Timer setting is ignored if [Interleave] is set for [Print Priority].

### **Interleave Print**

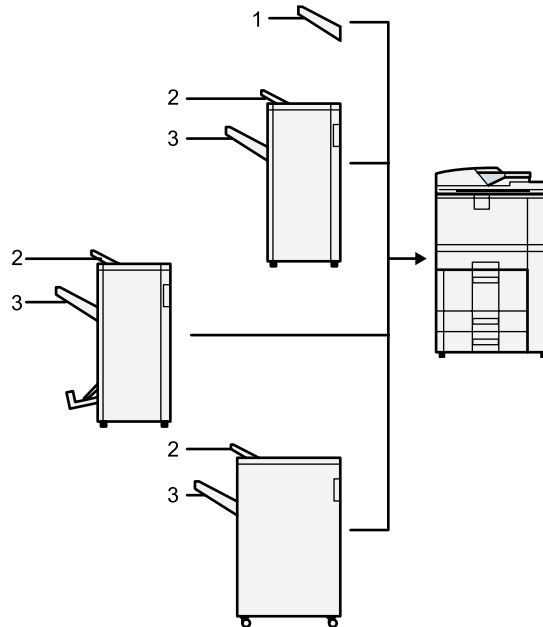
You can set the timing for changing modes when Print Priority has been set to [Interleave].

The default setting is **10 sheet(s)**.

You can set the number from 1 to 20 sheets using the number keys.

### **Output: Copier (copier)**

Specify a tray to which documents are delivered.



BAX004S

1. Copy Tray
2. Finisher Upper Tray
3. Finisher Shift Tray

The default setting is **Copy Tray**.

#### **Output: Document Server (Document Server)**

Specify a tray to which documents are delivered.

The default setting is **Copy Tray**.

#### **Output: Facsimile (facsimile)**

Specify a tray to which documents are delivered.

The default setting is **Copy Tray**.

"Finisher Shift Tray" is displayed when the optional finisher SR4010 (50-sheet-staples) or finisher SR4020 (saddle stitch) is installed.

#### **Output: Printer (printer)**

Specify a tray to which documents are delivered.

The default setting is **Copy Tray**.

#### **ADF Original Table Elevation**

Set when to raise the ADF plate after placing originals on the Auto Document Feeder (ADF).

The default setting is **When Original is Set**.

### System Status/Job List Display Time

Specify how long to display the System Status and Job List display for.

The default setting is **On, 15 second(s)**.

By selecting [On], you can specify a display time between 10 and 999 seconds.

### Time Interval between Printing Jobs

Specify interval time after printing is completed until starting the next printing.

The default setting is **Set Time, 3 second(s)**.

By selecting [Set Time], you can specify an interval time between 0 and 999 seconds.

### Key Repeat

You can enable or disable repetition of an operation if a key on the screen or control panel is pressed continuously.

The default setting is **Normal**.

### Z-fold Position

If you specify Z-folding, set the fold-back position in 1 mm (0.1") increments.

The setting ranges of the folding position for each paper size are shown below:

- Metric version
  - A3: 2-25 mm
  - B4 JIS: 2-40 mm
  - A4: 2-10 mm
  - 11×17: 2-20 mm
  - 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×14: 2-35 mm
- Inch version
  - A3: 0.1"-1.0"
  - B4 JIS: 0.1"-1.6"
  - A4: 0.1"-0.4"
  - 11×17: 0.1"-0.8"
  - 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×14: 0.1"-1.4"

The default setting is **2 mm** (Metric version) / **0.1"** (Inch version).

### Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

---

## Output Tray Settings

---

### Important

- You cannot interrupt the current stapling job even if a stapling job is specified by a different function.
- When the optional finisher is installed and stapling or shift-sorting is specified, the job will be delivered to the finisher shift tray regardless of the output tray specified.

# Tray Paper Settings

This section describes the user tools in the Tray Paper Settings menu under System Settings.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

## ★ Important

- If the specified paper size differs from the actual size of the paper loaded in the paper tray, a misfeed might occur because the correct paper size was not detected.

### Paper Tray Priority: Copier (copier/Document Server)

Specify the tray to supply paper for output.

The default setting is **Tray 1**.

If the optional large capacity tray (LCT) or wide large capacity tray (Wide LCT) is installed, [LCT] is displayed.

### Paper Tray Priority: Facsimile (facsimile)

Specify the tray to supply paper for output.

The default setting is **Tray 1**.

If the optional large capacity tray (LCT) or wide large capacity tray (Wide LCT) is installed, [LCT] is displayed.

### Paper Tray Priority: Printer (printer)

Specify the tray to supply paper for output.

The default setting is **Tray 1**.

If the optional large capacity tray (LCT) or wide large capacity tray (Wide LCT) is installed, [LCT] is displayed.

The default tray switches to LCT if the optional large capacity tray (LCT) or wide large capacity tray (Wide LCT) is installed.

### Printer Bypass Paper Size

Specify the size of the paper in the bypass tray when printing data from the computer.

The paper sizes you can set for bypass tray are as follows:

- Metric version
  - "Auto Detect", "A3", "A4", "A4", "A5", "A5", "A6", "B4 JIS", "B5 JIS", "B5 JIS", "B6 JIS", "12×18", "11×17", "11×15", "11×14", "10×15", "10×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×13", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×13", "8×13", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "8×10", "8×10", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "100mm×148mm", "Custom Size"
- Inch version

- "Auto Detect", "12×18", "11×17", "11×15", "11×14", "10×15", "10×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×13", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×13", "8×13", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "8×10", "8×10", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "A3", "A4", "A4", "A5", "A5", "A6", "B4 JIS", "B5 JIS", "B5 JIS", "B6 JIS", "100mm×148mm", "Custom Size"

You can specify a custom size of between 100.0 - 305.0 mm (3.94" - 12.00") vertically, and between 148.0 - 457.2 mm (5.83" - 18.00") horizontally.

### Tray Paper Size: Tray 2-3

Select the size of the paper loaded in the paper tray.

The paper guide for the tray 1 is fixed. If you need to change the paper size, contact your service representative.

The paper sizes you can set for tray 2-3 are as follows:

- "Auto Detect", "A3", "A4", "A4", "A5", "A5", "B4 JIS", "B5 JIS", "B5 JIS", "12×18", "11×17", "11×15", "11×14", "10×15", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×13", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×13", "8×13", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "8K", "16K", "16K", "170mm×210mm", "340mm×210mm"

The default setting is **Auto Detect**.

### Tray Paper Size: LCT

Select the size of the paper loaded in the optional wide large capacity tray (Wide LCT).

This menu appears only when the optional wide large capacity tray (Wide LCT) is installed.

The paper guide for the optional large capacity tray (LCT) is fixed. If you need to change the paper size, contact your service representative.

The paper sizes you can set for wide large capacity tray (Wide LCT) are as follows:

- Metric version
  - "Auto Detect", "A3", "A4", "A4", "A5", "A5", "A6", "B4 JIS", "B5 JIS", "B5 JIS", "B6 JIS", "12×18", "11×17", "11×15", "11×14", "10×15", "10×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×13", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×13", "8×13", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "8×10", "8×10", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "8K", "16K", "16K", "210mm×182mm", "182mm×210mm", "210mm×170mm", "170mm×210mm", "340mm×210mm", "Custom Size"
- Inch version
  - "Auto Detect", "12×18", "11×17", "11×15", "11×14", "10×15", "10×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×13", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×13", "8×13", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "8×10", "8×10", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "A3", "A4", "A4", "A5", "A5"

☐, "A6☐", "B4 JIS☐", "B5 JIS☐", "B5 JIS☐", "B6 JIS☐", "210mm×182mm", "182mm×210mm", "210mm×170mm", "170mm×210mm", "340mm×210mm", "Custom Size"

You can specify a custom size of between 100.0 - 305.0 mm (3.94" - 12.00") vertically, and between 139.7 - 487.6 mm (5.50" - 19.19") horizontally.

The default setting is **Auto Detect**.

## 2

### Tray Paper Size: Interposer Upper Tray

Select the size of the paper loaded in the interposer upper tray.

This menu appears only when the optional twin interposer is installed.

The paper sizes you can set for interposer upper tray are as follows:

- Metric version
  - "Auto Detect", "A3☐", "A4☐", "A4☐", "A5☐", "A5☐", "B4 JIS☐", "B5 JIS☐", "B5 JIS☐", "12×18☐", "11×17☐", "11×15☐", "11×14☐", "10×15☐", "10×14☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×14☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×13☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×14☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×13☐", "8×13☐", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "8×10☐", "8×10☐", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "8K☐", "16K☐", "16K☐", "210mm×182mm", "182mm×210mm", "210mm×170mm", "170mm×210mm", "340mm×210mm", "Custom Size"
- Inch version
  - "Auto Detect", "12×18☐", "11×17☐", "11×15☐", "11×14☐", "10×15☐", "10×14☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×14☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×13☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×14☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×13☐", "8×13☐", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "8×10☐", "8×10☐", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "A3☐", "A4☐", "A4☐", "A5☐", "A5☐", "B4 JIS☐", "B5 JIS☐", "B5 JIS☐", "210mm×182mm", "182mm×210mm", "210mm×170mm", "170mm×210mm", "340mm×210mm", "Custom Size"

You can specify a custom size of between 139.7 - 305.0 mm (5.50" - 12.00") vertically, and between 139.7 - 458.0 mm (5.50" - 18.00") horizontally.

The default setting is **Auto Detect**.

### Tray Paper Size: Interposer Lower Tray

Select the size of the paper loaded in the interposer lower tray.

This menu appears only when the optional twin interposer is installed.

The paper sizes you can set for interposer lower tray are as follows:

- Metric version
  - "Auto Detect", "A3☐", "A4☐", "A4☐", "A5☐", "A5☐", "B4 JIS☐", "B5 JIS☐", "B5 JIS☐", "12×18☐", "11×17☐", "11×15☐", "11×14☐", "10×15☐", "10×14☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×14☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×13☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×14☐", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×13☐", "8×13☐", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "8×10☐", "8×10☐", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>☐", "8K☐", "16K☐", "16K☐", "210mm×182mm",



"182mm×210mm", "210mm×170mm", "170mm×210mm", "340mm×210mm",  
"Custom Size"

- Inch version
  - "Auto Detect", "12×18", "11×17", "11×15", "11×14", "10×15", "10×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×13", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×14", "8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×13", "8×13", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "8×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "8×10", "8×10", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>", "A3", "A4", "A4", "A5", "A5", "B4 JIS", "B5 JIS", "B5 JIS", "210mm×182mm", "182mm×210mm", "210mm×170mm", "170mm×210mm", "340mm×210mm", "Custom Size"

You can specify a custom size of between 139.7 - 305.0 mm (5.50" - 12.00") vertically, and between 139.7 - 458.0 mm (5.50" - 18.00") horizontally.

The default setting is **Auto Detect**.

### Paper Type: Bypass Tray

Sets the display so you can see what type of paper is loaded in the bypass tray.

The paper types you can set for the bypass tray are as follows:

- No Display, Recycled Paper, Color Paper 1, Color Paper 2, Letterhead, Label Paper, Translucent Paper, Preprinted Paper, Bond Paper, Cardstock, Prepunched Paper, OHP(Transparency), Special Paper 1, Special Paper 2, Tab Stock

The paper thicknesses you can set for the bypass tray are as follows:

- Thin Paper (52.3 - 65.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (13.9 - 17.9 lb.Bond, 19.3 - 23.9 lb.Cover, 28.9 - 36.4 lb.Index)
- Plain Paper 1 (66.0 - 80.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (18 - 21.9 lb.Bond, 24 - 29.9 lb.Cover, 36.5 - 44.9 lb.Index)
- Plain Paper 2 (81.0 - 100.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (22 - 26.9 lb.Bond, 30 - 37 lb.Cover, 45 - 55.9 lb.Index)
- Middle Thick (101.0 - 127.4 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (27 - 33.9 lb.Bond, 37.1 - 46.9 lb.Cover, 56 - 70.4 lb.Index)
- Thick Paper 1 (127.5 - 163.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (34 - 43.9 lb.Bond, 47 - 60 lb.Cover, 70.5 - 90.4 lb.Index)
- Thick Paper 2 (164.0 - 249.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (44 - 66.9 lb.Bond, 60.1 - 91.9 lb.Cover, 90.5 - 137.9 lb.Index)
- Thick Paper 3 (250.0 - 300.0 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (67 - 80 lb.Bond, 92 - 110 lb.Cover, 138 - 165.7 lb.Index)

The default setting for "Paper Type" is **No Display**.

The default setting for "Paper Thickness" is **Plain Paper 1**.

For details about the relations between possible paper sizes and thickness, see "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types", About This Machine.

For details about the recommended conditions for using thick paper, see "Thick Paper", About This Machine.

### Paper Type: Tray 2-3

Sets the display so you can see what type of paper is loaded in each paper tray.

The print function uses this information to automatically select the paper tray.

The paper types you can set for the paper tray 2-3 are as follows:

- No Display, Recycled Paper, Color Paper 1, Color Paper 2, Letterhead, Preprinted Paper, Bond Paper, Cardstock, Prepunched Paper, Special Paper 1, Special Paper 2, Tab Stock

The paper thicknesses you can set for the paper tray 2-3 are as follows:

- Thin Paper (52.3 - 65.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (13.9 - 17.9 lb.Bond, 19.3 - 23.9 lb.Cover, 28.9 - 36.4 lb.Index)
- Plain Paper 1 (66.0 - 80.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (18 - 21.9 lb.Bond, 24 - 29.9 lb.Cover, 36.5 - 44.9 lb.Index)
- Plain Paper 2 (81.0 - 100.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (22 - 26.9 lb.Bond, 30 - 37 lb.Cover, 45 - 55.9 lb.Index)
- Middle Thick (101.0 - 127.4 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (27 - 33.9 lb.Bond, 37.1 - 46.9 lb.Cover, 56 - 70.4 lb.Index)
- Thick Paper 1 (127.5 - 163.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (34 - 43.9 lb.Bond, 47 - 60 lb.Cover, 70.5 - 90.4 lb.Index)
- Thick Paper 2 (164 - 216 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (44 - 57.6 lb.Bond, 60.1 - 80 lb.Cover, 90.5 - 119.3 lb.Index)

The default setting for "Paper Type" is **No Display**.

The default setting for "Paper Thickness" is **Plain Paper 1**.

The default setting for "Apply Duplex" is **Yes**.

The default setting for "Apply Auto Paper Select" is **Yes**.

The key mark is displayed next to the paper tray if [No] is selected in "Auto Paper Select".

The optional tab sheet holder is required when using tab stock in tray 2 or 3.

The number of tab stock shifts can be set in millimeters, when [Tab Stock] has been selected.

The number of tab stock shift can be set in 1 millimeter (1 inch) units, within a range of 0 to 15 mm (0" to 0.6"). The default is 13 mm (0.5").

Auto Paper Select can only be selected for the copier function if [No Display] and [Recycled Paper] are selected. If [No] is selected, Auto Paper Select is not valid.

For details about the relations between possible paper sizes and thickness, see "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types", About This Machine.

For details about the recommended conditions for using thick paper, see "Thick Paper", About This Machine.

### Paper Type: LCT (When the large capacity tray is installed.)

Sets the display so you can see what type of paper is loaded in the large capacity tray (LCT).

The print function uses this information to automatically select the paper tray.

The paper types you can set for the large capacity tray (LCT) are as follows:

- No Display, Recycled Paper, Color Paper 1, Color Paper 2, Letterhead, Preprinted Paper, Bond Paper, Cardstock, Prepunched Paper, Special Paper 1, Special Paper 2

The paper thicknesses you can set for the large capacity tray (LCT) are as follows:

- Thin Paper (52.3 - 65.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (13.9 - 17.9 lb.Bond, 19.3 - 23.9 lb.Cover, 28.9 - 36.4 lb.Index)
- Plain Paper 1 (66.0 - 80.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (18 - 21.9 lb.Bond, 24 - 29.9 lb.Cover, 36.5 - 44.9 lb.Index)
- Plain Paper 2 (81.0 - 100.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (22 - 26.9 lb.Bond, 30 - 37 lb.Cover, 45 - 55.9 lb.Index)
- Middle Thick (101.0 - 127.4 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (27 - 33.9 lb.Bond, 37.1 - 46.9 lb.Cover, 56 - 70.4 lb.Index)

The default setting for "Paper Type" is **No Display**.

The default setting for "Paper Thickness" is **Plain Paper 1**.

The default setting for "Apply Duplex" is **Yes**.

The default setting for "Apply Auto Paper Select" is **Yes**.

The key mark is displayed next to the paper tray if [No] is selected in [Auto Paper Select].

Auto Paper Select can only be selected for the copier function if [No Display] and [Recycled Paper] are selected. If [No] is selected, Auto Paper Select is not valid.

For details about the relations between possible paper sizes and thickness, see "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types", About This Machine.

For details about the recommended conditions for using thick paper, see "Thick Paper", About This Machine.

### **Paper Type: LCT (When the wide large capacity tray is installed.)**

Sets the display so you can see what type of paper is loaded in the wide large capacity tray (Wide LCT).

The print function uses this information to automatically select the paper tray.

The paper types you can set for the wide large capacity tray (Wide LCT) are as follows:

- No Display, Recycled Paper, Color Paper 1, Color Paper 2, Letterhead, Preprinted Paper, Bond Paper, Cardstock, Label Paper, Translucent Paper, Prepunched Paper, OHP(Transparency), Special Paper 1, Special Paper 2, Tab Stock

The paper thicknesses you can set for the wide large capacity tray (Wide LCT) are as follows:

- Thin Paper (52.3 - 65.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (13.9 - 17.9 lb.Bond, 19.3 - 23.9 lb.Cover, 28.9 - 36.4 lb.Index)
- Plain Paper 1 (66.0 - 80.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (18 - 21.9 lb.Bond, 24 - 29.9 lb.Cover, 36.5 - 44.9 lb.Index)
- Plain Paper 2 (81.0 - 100.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (22 - 26.9 lb.Bond, 30 - 37 lb.Cover, 45 - 55.9 lb.Index)
- Middle Thick (101.0 - 127.4 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (27 - 33.9 lb.Bond, 37.1 - 46.9 lb.Cover, 56 - 70.4 lb.Index)

- Thick Paper 2 (164.0 - 249.9 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (44 - 66.9 lb.Bond, 60 - 91.9 lb.Cover, 90.5 - 137.9 lb.Index)
- Thick Paper 3 (250.0 - 300.0 g/m<sup>2</sup>) (67 - 80 lb.Bond, 92 - 110 lb.Cover, 138 - 165.7 lb.Index)

The default setting for "Paper Type" is **No Display**.

The default setting for "Paper Thickness" is **Plain Paper 1**.

The default setting for "Apply Duplex" is **Yes**.

The default setting for "Apply Auto Paper Select" is **Yes**.

The key mark is displayed next to the paper tray if [No] is selected in [Auto Paper Select].

Auto Paper Select can only be selected for the copier function if [No Display] and [Recycled Paper] are selected. If [No] is selected, Auto Paper Select is not valid.

For details about the relations between possible paper sizes and thickness, see "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types", About This Machine.

For details about the recommended conditions for using thick paper, see "Thick Paper", About This Machine.

### Front Cover Sheet Tray

You can specify and display the paper tray that is used to set front cover sheets. After selecting the paper tray, you can also specify the display timing and copy method for two-sided copying.

The default setting is **Off**.

When [At Mode Selected] is selected, front cover sheet tray settings only appear when the cover function or slip sheet function is selected.

When [Full Time] is selected, the front cover sheet tray is always displayed.

### Back Cover Sheet Tray

You can specify and display the paper tray that is used to set back cover sheets. After selecting the paper tray, you can also specify the display timing and copy method for two-sided copying.

The default setting is **Off**.

When [At Mode Selected] is selected, back cover sheet tray settings only appear when the cover function or slip sheet function is selected.

When [Full Time] is selected, the back cover sheet tray is always displayed.

### Slip Sheet Tray

You can specify and display the paper tray that is used for setting slip sheets.

You can also specify the display timing and copy method for two-sided copying.

The default setting is **Off**.

When [At Mode Selected] is selected, slip sheet tray settings only appear when the cover function or slip sheet function is selected.

When [Full Time] is selected, the slip sheet tray is always displayed.

## Designation Sheet 1 Tray / Designation Sheet 2 Tray

You can specify and display the paper tray that is used for setting designation sheets.

You can also specify the display timing and copy method for two-sided copying.

The default setting is **Off**.

When [At Mode Selected] is selected, slip sheet tray settings only appear when the cover function or slip sheet function is selected.

When [Full Time] is selected, the slip sheet tray is always displayed.

## Separation Sheet Tray

You can specify and display the paper tray that is used for setting separation sheets.

You can also specify the display timing and copy method for two-sided copying.

The default setting is **Off**.

When [At Mode Selected] is selected, separation sheet tray settings only appear when the cover function or slip sheet function is selected.

When [Full Time] is selected, the slip sheet tray is always displayed.

## Paper Type Detect

You can specify whether or not the machine automatically detects the paper type (plain 1, plain 2, thin, middle thick, thick 1, thick 2, thick 3, translucent paper, or OHP transparency). If detection is enabled and the paper type that is loaded differs from the detected paper type, a warning message appears. Press the [Clear/Stop] key, remove paper from inside the machine and configure new paper settings correctly or change paper.

- On
- Off

Trays that can be specified:

- Bypass Tray
- Tray 1
- Tray 2
- Tray 3
- LCT

### ↓ Note

- Some paper types cannot be detected.
- Depending on the paper type, the machine reports a warning message even though a proper paper type is loaded. In this case, specify "Off" for this setting.
- If you select duplex copying, the paper type of the backs of originals cannot be detected.
- [Paper Type Detect] works only if you select "No Display", "Recycled Paper", "Translucent Paper", or "OHP" in [Paper Type:] in System Settings.

- The machine also detects the paper type automatically if you specify the optional wide large capacity tray (Wide LCT) for Type 2 and specify "Special Paper 2" as the paper type.
- The following paper types cannot be detected or may not be detected properly:
  - Printed paper or copies
  - Colored paper
  - Preprinted paper
  - Bent, folded, or creased paper
  - Paper with holes
  - Smudged, damaged, or torn paper
  - Back of paper
  - Batch of more than one paper type
  - Sheets shorter than 160 mm (only if loaded in the bypass tray)

### Double Feed Detect

You can specify whether or not the machine stops if more than one sheet of plain 1, plain 2, thin, middle thick, thick 1, thick 2, thick 3, translucent paper, or OHP transparency has fed in at the same time. If double feeds occur, the machine stops operating as if misfeed has occurred. Remove paper from the tray and fan it thoroughly before resetting it in the tray.

- On
- Off

Trays that can be specified:

- Bypass Tray
- Tray 1
- Tray 2
- Tray 3
- LCT

#### ↓ Note

- With certain paper types, double feeds cannot be detected.
- Depending on the paper type, the machine may detect double feeds even though they have not actually occurred. In this case, specify "Off" for this setting.
- If you select duplex copying, the paper type of the backs of originals cannot be detected.
- [Double Feed Detect] works only if you select "No Display", "Recycled Paper", "Translucent Paper", or "OHP" in [Paper Type:] in System Settings.
- The machine also detects the paper type automatically if you specify the optional wide large capacity tray (Wide LCT) for Type 2 and specify "Special Paper 2" as the paper type.
- The following paper types cannot be detected or may not be detected properly:

- Printed paper or copies
- Colored paper
- Preprinted paper
- Bent, folded, or creased paper
- Paper with holes
- Smudged, damaged, or torn paper
- Back of paper
- Batch of more than one paper type
- Sheets shorter than 160 mm (only if loaded in the bypass tray)

## Timer Settings

This section describes the user tools in the Timer Settings menu under System Settings.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

### Auto Off Timer

After a specified period has passed, following job completion, the machine automatically turns off, in order to conserve energy. This function is called "Auto Off".

The machine status after the Auto Off operation is referred to as "Off mode", or "Sleep mode".

For the Auto Off Timer, specify the time to elapse before Auto Off.

The default setting is **30 min.**

The time can be set from 1 to 240 minutes, using the number keys.

Auto Off may not work when error messages appear.

### Energy Saver Timer

Set the amount of time the machine waits before switching to lower-power mode after copying has finished or the last operation is performed.

The time can be set from 1 to 240 minutes, using the number keys.

The default setting is **15 min.**

### Panel Off Timer

Set the amount of time the machine waits before switching the panel off after copying has finished or the last operation is performed.

Enter a time interval between 10 seconds and 240 minutes, using the number keys.

The default setting is **60 second(s)**.

### System Auto Reset Timer

The System Reset setting automatically switches the screen to that of the function set in Function Priority when no operations are in progress, or when an interrupted job is cleared. This setting determines the system reset interval.

The time can be set from 10 to 999 seconds, using the number keys.

The default setting is **On, 60 second(s)**.

### Copier/Document Server Auto Reset Timer (copier/Document Server)

Specifies the time to elapse before copier and Document Server modes reset.

If [Off] is selected, the machine does not automatically switch to the user code entry screen.

The time can be set from 10 to 999 seconds, using the number keys.

The default setting is **On, 60 second(s)**.



### Facsimile Auto Reset Timer (facsimile)

Specify the time to elapse before the facsimile mode resets.

The time can be set from 30 to 999 seconds, using the number keys.

The default setting is **30 second(s)**.

### Printer Auto Reset Timer (printer)

Specify the time to elapse before the printer function resets.

The time can be set from 10 to 999 seconds, using the number keys.

The default setting is **On, 60 second(s)**.

### Scanner Auto Reset Timer (scanner)

Specify the time to elapse before the scanner function resets.

If [Off] is selected, the machine will not automatically switch to the user code entry screen.

The time can be set from 10 to 999 seconds, using the number keys.

The default setting is **On, 60 second(s)**.

### Set Date

Set the date for the copier's internal clock using the number keys.

To change between year, month, and day, press [←] and [→].

### Set Time

Set the time for the copier's internal clock using the number keys.

Enter the time using the 24-hour format (in 1 second increments).

To change between hours, minutes and seconds, press [←] and [→].

### Auto Logout Timer

Specify whether or not to automatically log out a user when the user does not operate the machine for a specified period of time after logging in.

The time can be set from 60 to 999 seconds, in one second increments, using the number keys.

The default setting is **On, 180 second(s)**.

### Weekly Timer Code

Set a password (using not more than eight digits) for turning on the power during the time periods when "Weekly Timer" turns off the machine's power.

In order to make this setting, administrator authentication must be enabled. For details, consult your administrator.

The default setting is **Off**.

If you have selected "On", enter the password.

When you select "On", you cannot use the machine even if you turn the power switch to "On", unless you enter the password.

If you select "Off", you do not have to enter a password to switch on the machine, you need only turn the power switch to "On".

### **Weekly Timer: Monday - Sunday**

Set the daily time when the power is switched on/off.

- Power On Time
- Power Off Time

Enter the time using the 24-hour system.

Enter the "hour" and "minute" using the number keys.

#### **Reference**

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

# Interface Settings

This section describes the user tools in the Interface Settings menu under System Settings.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

---

## Network

---

2

This section describes the user tools in the Network menu under Interface Settings.

### Machine IPv4 Address

Specify the machine's IPv4 network address.

The default setting is **Auto-Obtain (DHCP)**.

When you select [Specify], enter the IPv4 address and subnet mask as "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx" ("x" indicates a number).

When you select [Specify], make sure that IPv4 address is different from that of other machines on the network.

The physical address (MAC address) also appears.

### IPv4 Gateway Address

A gateway is a connection or interchange point between two networks.

Specify the gateway address for the router or host computer used as a gateway.

The default setting is **000.000.000.000**.

### Machine IPv6 Address

Displays the machine's IPv6 network address.

- Link-local Address  
The machine's specified link-local address appears.
- Manual Configuration Address  
The machine's manually configured address appears.
- Stateless Address: 1-5  
The specified stateless address appears.

### IPv6 Gateway Address

Displays the machine's IPv6 gateway address.

### IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration

Specify IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration.

The default setting is **Active**.

### DNS Configuration

Make settings for the DNS server.

The default setting is **Auto-Obtain (DHCP)**.

When you select [Specify], enter the DNS Server IPv4 address as "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx" ("x" indicates a number).

### DDNS Configuration

Specify the DDNS settings.

The default setting is **Active**.

### IPSec

Specify the machine's IPSec function Active/Inactive.

The default setting is **Inactive**.

### Domain Name

Specify the domain name.

The default setting is **Auto-Obtain (DHCP)**.

When you select [Specify], enter the domain name using up to 63 characters.

### WINS Configuration

Specify the WINS server settings.

The default setting is **Off**.

If [On] is selected, enter the WINS Server IPv4 address as "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx" ("x" indicates a number).

If DHCP is in use, specify the scope ID. Enter a scope ID using up to 31 characters.

### Effective Protocol

Select the Protocol to use in the network.

The default setting for "IPv4" is **Active**.

The default setting for "IPv6" is **Inactive**.

The default setting for "NetWare" is **Active**.

The default setting for "SMB" is **Active**.

The default setting for "AppleTalk" is **Active**.

### NCP Delivery Protocol

Select the protocol NCP delivery.

The default setting is **TCP / IP Priority**.

If you select "IPX Only" or "TCP / IP Only", you cannot switch the protocol even if you cannot connect with it. If "NetWare" in [Effective Protocol] is set to "Inactive", you can only use TCP/IP.

### NW Frame Type

Select the frame type when you use NetWare.

The default setting is **Auto Select**.

### SMB Computer Name

Specify the SMB computer name.

Enter the computer name using up to 15 characters.

"\*+/,/;<>=?[\]|" and spaces cannot be entered.

Do not set a computer name starting with RNP and rnp.

Use uppercase letters for alphabets.

### SMB Work Group

Specify the SMB work group.

Enter the computer name using up to 15 characters.

"\*+/,/;<>=?[\]|" and spaces cannot be entered.

Use uppercase letters for alphabet.

### Ethernet Speed

Set the access speed for networks.

The default setting is **Auto Select**.

Select a speed that matches your network environment. [Auto Select] should usually be selected.

	10Mbps Half Duplex	10Mbps Full Duplex	100Mbps Half Duplex	100Mbps Full Duplex	Auto Select
10Mbps Half Duplex	●	—	—	—	●
10Mbps Full Duplex	—	●	—	—	—
100Mbps Half Duplex	—	—	●	—	●
100Mbps Full Duplex	—	—	—	●	—
Auto Select	●	—	●	—	●

### Ping Command

Check the network connection with ping command using given IPv4 address.

If you fail to connect to the network, check the following, and then retry the ping command.

- Make sure that "IPv4" in [Effective Protocol] is set to "Active".
- Check that the machine with assigned IPv4 address is connected to the network.

- There is a possibility that the same IPv4 address is used for the specified equipment.

### Permit SNMPv3 Communication

Set the encrypted communication of SNMPv3.

The default setting is **Encryption / Cleartext**.

If you select to [Encryption Only], you need to set an encryption password for the machine.

### Permit SSL / TLS Communication

Set the encrypted communication of SSL/TLS.

The default setting is **Ciphertext / Cleartext**.

If you set to [Ciphertext Only], you need to install the SSL certificate for the machine.

### Host Name

Specify the host name.

Enter the host name using up to 63 characters.

### Machine Name

Specify the machine name.

Enter the machine name using up to 31 characters.

---

## Print List

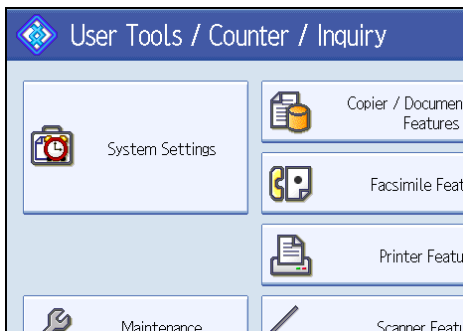
---

This section describes how to print the configuration page.

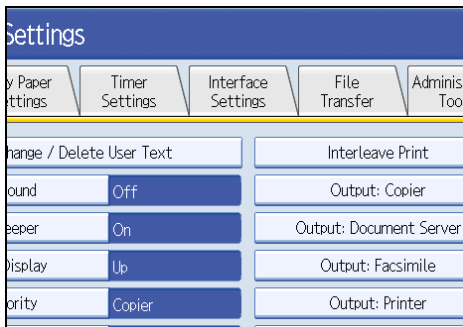
You can check items related to the network environment.

The configuration page shows the current network settings and network information.

### 1. Press [System Settings].

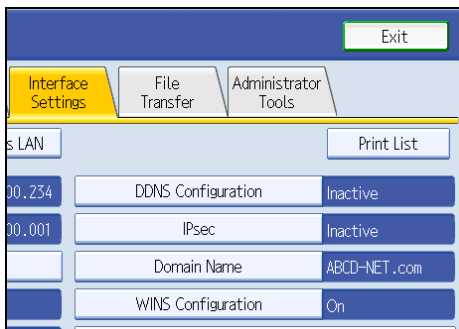


## 2. Press [Interface Settings].



2

## 3. Press [Print List].



## 4. Press the [Start] key.

The configuration page is printed.

## 5. Press [Exit].

## 6. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### ↓ Note

- You can also exit by pressing [Exit] on the User Tools main menu.

# File Transfer

This section describes the user tools in the File Transfer menu under System Settings.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

## SMTP Server

2

Specify the SMTP server name.

If DNS is in use, enter the host name.

If DNS is not in use, enter the SMTP server IPv4 address.

The default setting for "Port No." is **25**.

Enter the server name using up to 127 characters. Spaces cannot be entered.

Enter port number between 1 and 65535 using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.

The SMTP server shares the same port number with the Direct SMTP server.

## SMTP Authentication

Specify SMTP authentication (PLAIN, LOGIN, CRAMMD5, DIGEST-MD5). When sending e-mail to an SMTP server, you can enhance the SMTP server security level using authentication that requires entering the user name and password.

If the SMTP server requires authentication, set [SMTP Authentication] to [On], and then specify the user name, password and encryption.

Enter the user name and password to be set for the Administrator's e-mail address when using Internet Fax.

The default setting is **Off**.

- Enter the user name using up to 191 characters.  
Spaces cannot be entered. Depending on the SMTP server type, "realm" must be specified. Add "@" after the user name, as in "user name@realm".
- Enter the password using up to 128 characters.  
Spaces cannot be entered.
- Enter the E-mail address using up to 128 characters.
- Select Encryption as follows:
  - "Encryption"-[Auto]  
Use if the authentication method is PLAIN, LOGIN, CRAM-MD5, or DIGEST-MD5.
  - "Encryption"-[On]  
Use if the authentication method is CRAMMD5 or DIGEST-MD5.
  - "Encryption"-[Off]  
Use if the authentication method is PLAIN, or LOGIN.



## POP before SMTP

Specify POP authentication (POP before SMTP).

When sending e-mail to an SMTP server, you can enhance the SMTP server security level by connecting to the POP server for authentication.

The default setting is **Off**.

If you set POP before SMTP to [On], specify the waiting time after authentication, user name, e-mail address, and password.

- Wait Time after Authent.: **300 msec.**

Specify [Wait Time after Authent.] from zero to 10,000 milliseconds, in increments of one millisecond.

- User Name

Enter the user name using up to 191 characters. Spaces cannot be entered.

- E-mail Address

Enter the E-mail Address using up to 128 characters. Spaces cannot be entered.

- Password

Enter the password using up to 128 characters. Spaces cannot be entered.

To enable POP server authentication before sending e-mail via the SMTP server, set [POP before SMTP] to [On]. E-mail is sent to the SMTP server after the time specified for [Wait Time after Authent.] has elapsed.

If you select [On], enter server name in POP3 / IMAP4 Settings. Also, check POP3 port number in E-mail Communication Port.

## Reception Protocol

Specify the Reception Protocol for receiving Internet Fax.

The default setting is **POP3**.

## POP3 / IMAP4 Settings

Specify the POP3/IMAP4 server name for receiving Internet faxes.

The specified POP3/IMAP4 server name is used for [POP before SMTP].

The default setting is **Auto**.

- Server Name

If DNS is in use, enter the host name.

If DNS is not in use, enter the POP3/IMAP4 or server IPv4 address.

Enter POP3/IMAP4 server name using up to 127 characters. Spaces cannot be entered.

- Select Encryption as follows:

Encryption-[Auto]

Password encryption is automatically set according to the POP/IMAP server settings.

Encryption-[On]

Encrypt password.

Encryption-[Off]

Do not encrypt password.

### Administrator's E-mail Address

2

Specify the Administrator's E-mail Address.

If a failure occurs in the machine or consumables need to be replaced, e-mail messages are sent to the Administrator's E-mail Address by E-mail Notification function.

On e-mailed scanned documents, if the sender is not specified this appears as the sender's address.

When sending e-mail under the Internet fax function, administrator's e-mail address will appear as the sender's address under the following conditions:

- The sender has not been specified and the machine's e-mail address has not been registered.
- The specified sender is not registered in the machine's address book and the machine's e-mail address has not been registered.

When conducting SMTP authentication for the transmitted files under the Internet fax function, the Administrator's E-mail Address will appear in the "From:" box. If you have specified the user name and e-mail address in [SMTP Authentication], make sure to specify this setting.

Enter up to 128 characters.

On e-mailed scanned documents, if [Auto Specify Sender Name] is [Off], specify the sender.

### E-mail Communication Port

Specify the port numbers for receiving Internet faxes. The specified POP3 port number is used for [POP before SMTP].

The default setting for POP3 is **110**.

The default setting for IMAP4 is **143**.

Enter a port number between 1 and 65535 using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.

### E-mail Reception Interval

Specify, in minutes, the time interval for receiving Internet faxes via POP3 or IMAP4 server.

The default setting is **On, 15 minute(s)**.

If [On] is selected, the time can be set from 2 to 1440 minutes in increments of one minute.

### Max. Reception E-mail Size

Specify the maximum reception e-mail size for receiving Internet faxes.

The default setting is **2MB**.

Enter a size from one to 50 MB in increments of one megabyte.

### E-mail Storage in Server

Specify whether or not to store received Internet fax e-mails on the POP3 or IMAP4 server.

The default setting is **Off**.

### Default User Name / Password (Send)

Specify the user name and password required when sending scan files directly to a shared folder on a computer running Windows, to an FTP server, or to a NetWare server.

Enter in up to 128 characters.

### Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message

You can program, change, or delete the e-mail message used when sending an Internet fax or scan file as an attachment.

- Program / Change:

1. Press [System Settings].
2. Press [File Transfer].
3. Press [▼Next].
4. Press [Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Press [\*Not Programmed].

To change the registered e-mail message, select the e-mail message to change.

7. Press [Change] under the "Name".
8. Enter a name, and then press [OK].

Enter the name using up to 20 characters.

9. Press [Edit].

To start a new line, press [OK] to return to the e-mail message screen, and then press [▼Next] in "Select Line to Edit".

10. Enter the text, and then press [OK].

Enter up to five lines of text. Each line can consist of up to 80 characters.

11. Press [OK].

12. Press [Exit].

- Delete:

1. Press [System Settings].
2. Press [File Transfer].
3. Press [▼Next].
4. Press [Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message].
5. Press [Delete].
6. Select the e-mail message to delete.

The confirmation message about deleting appears.

7. Press [Yes].

8. Press [Exit].

### Auto Specify Sender Name

Set whether or not to specify the name of the sender when sending e-mail.

The default setting is **Off**.

- On

If you select [On], the specified e-mail address will appear in the "From:" box. If you do not specify the sender's address, the administrator's e-mail address will appear in the "From:" box.

If you do not specify the sender when sending a file by e-mail under the fax function, or if the specified e-mail address is not registered in the machine's address book, the machine's e-mail address will appear in the "From:" box. If the machine does not have an e-mail address, the administrator's e-mail address will appear in the "From:" box.

- Off

If you select [Off], the specified e-mail address will appear in the "From:" box, but you cannot send e-mail without specifying the sender's e-mail address. Under the fax function, you cannot send e-mail if the specified sender's e-mail address is not registered in the machine's address book.

### Fax E-mail Account

Specify e-mail address, user name and password for receiving Internet faxes.

- E-mail Address

Enter an e-mail address using up to 128 characters.

- User Name

Enter a user name using up to 191 characters.

- Password

Enter a password using up to 128 characters.

### Scanner Resend Interval Time

Specifies the interval the machine waits before resending a scan file, if it cannot be sent to the mail server.

The default setting is **300 second(s)**.

The interval time can be set from 60 to 999 seconds in one second increments, using the number keys.

This setting is for the scanner function.

### Number of Scanner Resends

Sets a maximum number of times a scan file is resent to the mail server.

The default setting is **On, 3 time(s)**.

If [On] is selected, the number of times can be set from 1 to 99.

This setting is for the scanner function.

 **Reference**

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

# Administrator Tools

This section describes the user tools in the Administrator Tools menu under System Settings.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

Administrator Tools are used by the administrator. To change these settings, contact the administrator.

We recommend specifying Administrator Authentication before making Administrator Tools settings.

2

## Address Book Management

You can add, change or delete information registered in the Address Book.

For details, see "Address Book".

- Program / Change

You can register and change names as well as user codes.

- Names

You can register a name, key display, registration number, and title selection.

- Auth. Info

You can register a user code, and specify the functions available to each user code. You can also register user names and passwords to be used when sending e-mail, sending files to folders, or accessing an LDAP server.

- Protection

You can register a protection code.

- Fax Dest.

You can register a fax number, international TX mode, fax header, label insertion, IP-Fax destination, and protocol.

- E-mail

You can register an e-mail address.

- Folder

You can register the protocol, path, port number, and server name.

- Add to Group

You can put names registered in the Address Book into a group.

- Delete

You can delete a name from the Address Book.

You can register up to 2,000 names.

You can register up to 500 user codes.

You can also register and manage names in the Address Book using Web Image Monitor or SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

## Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group

Names registered in the Address Book can be added into a group. You can then easily manage the names registered in each group.

- Program / Change

You can register and change groups.

- Names

You can register a name, key display, registration number, and title selection.

- Programmed User/Group

You can check the names or groups registered in each group.

- Protection

You can register a protection code.

- Add to Group

You can put groups registered in the Address Book into a group.

- Delete

You can delete a group from the Address Book.

You can register up to 100 groups.

You can also register and manage groups in the Address Book using Web Image Monitor or SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

Use SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin provided with the printer scanner unit.

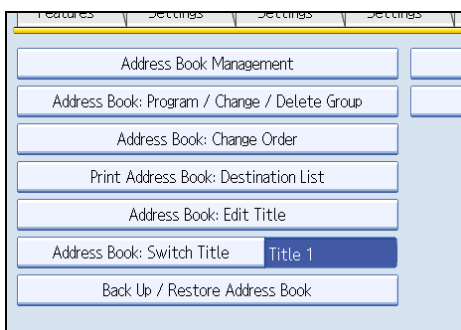
## Address Book: Change Order

Changes the order of registered names.

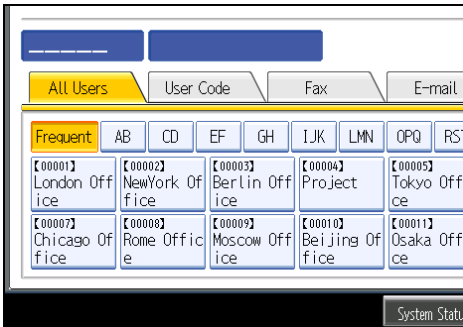
You can rearrange the order of items on the same page, but you cannot move items to another page.

For example, you cannot move an item from "PLANNING" ([OPQ]) to "DAILY" ([CD]).

1. Press [System Settings].
2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book: Change Order].

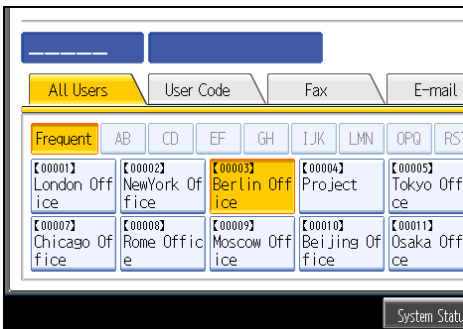


- Press the name key to be moved.



You can select a name using the number keys.

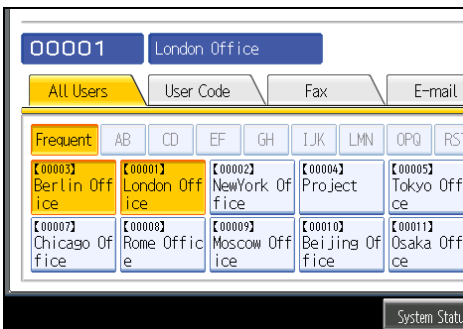
- Press the name key in place you want to move it to.



The user key is moved to the selected position, and the user key currently at the selected position is moved forward or backward.

If you move the selected user key forward, the user key currently at the selected position is moved backward.

If you move the selected user key backward, the user key currently at the selected position is moved forward.



You can also select a name using the number keys.



### Print Address Book: Destination List

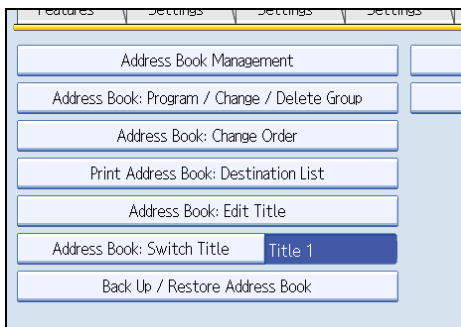
You can print the destination list registered in the Address Book.

- Print in Title 1 Order  
Prints the Address Book in Title 1 order.
- Print in Title 2 Order  
Prints the Address Book in Title 2 order.
- Print in Title 3 Order  
Prints the Address Book in Title 3 order.
- Print Group Dial List  
Prints the group Address Book.
  1. Press [System Settings].
  2. Press [Administrator Tools].
  3. Press [Print Address Book: Destination List].
  4. Select the print format.
  5. To print the list on two-sided pages, select [Print on 2 Sides].
  6. Press the [Start] key.  
The list prints out.

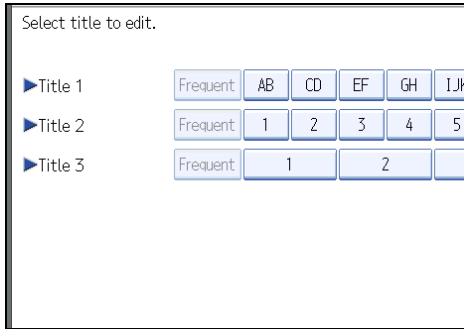
### Address Book: Edit Title

You can edit the title to easily find a user.

1. Press [System Settings].
2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book: Edit Title].



4. Press the title key you want to change.



5. Enter the new name, and then press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

### Address Book: Switch Title

Specifies the title to select a name.

The default setting is **Title 1**.

### Back Up / Restore Address Book

You can back up the machine's address book to external storage or restore the backup copy from the external storage.

Backup requires a removable SD card to be installed in this machine.

For details about installing and removing the SD card, contact your sales or service representative.

- Back Up  
You can back up the machine's address book onto an SD card.
- Restore  
You can restore the backup copy of the address book from external storage.
- Format  
You can format the external storage.
- Obtain Media Info

The free space and occupied space of the external storage are displayed.

#### ⬇ Note

- Restore data overwrites Address Book data stored on the machine, and clears the counter of each registered user of the machine.
- You can also back up and restore the machine's Address Book using Web Image Monitor or SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin. For details, see the Help files of Web Image Monitor on the supplied CD-ROM or the Help files of SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

### Display / Print Counter

Allows you to view and print the number of prints.

- Display / Print Counter

Displays the number of prints for each function (Total, Copier, Printer, A3 / DLT, Duplex, Fax Prints, Send / TX Total, Fax Transmission, Scanner Send).

- Print Counter List

Prints out a list of the number of prints made under each function.

### Display / Clear / Print Counter per User

Allows you to view and print the numbers of prints accessed with user codes, and to set those values to 0.

Press [**▲**Previous] and [**▼**Next] to show all the numbers of prints.

The number of prints may differ from the counter values shown in Display / Print Counter.

- Print Counter List for All Users  
Prints the counter value for all the users.
- Clear Counter List for All Users  
Resets the counter value for all the users.
- Print Counter List per User  
Prints the counter value for each user.
- Clear Counter List per User  
Resets the counter value for each user.
- Select All on the Page  
Select all the users on the page.

### User Authentication Management

- User Code Auth.

Using User Code Authentication, you can limit the available functions and supervise their use.

When using User Code Authentication, register the user code.

Using the Printer PC Control function, you can obtain a log of prints corresponding to the codes entered using the printer driver.

If User Code Authentication has been specified, Auto Color Select cannot be used.

For details about Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, and LDAP Authentication, consult your administrator.

- Copier:  
"Restrict All (B&W / Full Color)", "Full Color", "Do not Restrict"
- Printer:  
"Black & White", "Color", "PC Control", "Do not Restrict"
- Other Functions:  
"Document" "Server", "Facsimile", "Scanner"

- Printer Job Authentication:  
"Entire", "Simple (Limitation)", "Simple (All)"
- Basic Auth.
- Windows Auth.
- LDAP Auth.
- **Off**

### **Administrator Authentication Management**

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

### **Program / Change Administrator**

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

### **Extended Security**

Specify whether or not to use the extended security functions. For details about the extended security functions, consult your administrator.

### **Auto Delete File in Document Server**

Specify whether documents stored in the Document Server will or will not be deleted after a specified period of time.

The default setting is **On, 3 day(s)**.

If you select [On], documents stored subsequently are deleted after the specified period.

If you select [Off], documents are not automatically deleted.

If you select [On], enter a number of days from 1 to 180 (in 1 day increments).

The default is 3 days, this means documents are deleted 3 days (72 hours) after they are stored.

### **Delete All Files in Document Server**

You can delete files stored in the Document Server, including files stored for Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print under the printer function.

Even if a password is always set, all documents are deleted.

A confirmation message appears. To delete all documents, select [Yes].

### **Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server**

Program the LDAP server to find up e-mail destinations in the LDAP server Address Book directly. This function is possible when sending scan files by e-mail using the scanner or fax function.

To start an LDAP search, make sure that the items listed below are set. For other items, check your environment and make any necessary changes.

- Server Name
- Search Base
- Port Number

- Search Conditions
- Authentication

This function supports LDAP Version 2.0 and 3.0.

To use the LDAP server, select [On] under LDAP Search.

For details about how to program the LDAP Server, see "Programming the LDAP server".

### **LDAP Search**

Specify whether or not to use the LDAP server for searching.

The default setting is **Off**.

If you select [Off], LDAP server list will not appear on the searching display.

### **AOF (Always On)**

Specify whether or not to use Auto Off.

The default setting is **On**.

### **Program / Change / Delete Realm**

Program the realm to be used for Kerberos authentication.

- Realm Name
- KDC Server Name
- Domain Name

Be sure to set both the realm name and KDC server name when programming a realm.

For details about Program / Change / Delete Realm, see "Programming the Realm".

### **Firmware Version**

You can check the version of the software installed in this machine.

### **Network Security Level**

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

### **Auto Erase Memory Setting**

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

### **Erase All Memory**

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

### **Transfer Log Setting**

This function is not available with this machine. For details about this function, consult your administrator.

### **Print Backup: Delete All Files**

To delete a print backup document, press [Yes].

### Print Backup: Compression

Set the compression method for the document you want to back up.

The default setting is **High Compression**.

### Print Backup: Default Format

Set the default format for the document you want to back up.

The default setting is **For Printing**.

### Print Backup: Default Resolution

Set the default resolution for the document you want to back up.

The default setting is **50 %**.

### Fixed USB Port

Specify whether or not to fix the USB port.

The default setting is **Off**.

If a PC with the printer driver installed is connected to another device of the same model through the USB interface, selecting [On] for this option eliminates the need for additional installation of the driver to the PC.

### Machine Data Encryption Settings

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

#### Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"
- p.77 "Programming the LDAP server"
- p.83 "Programming the Realm"
- p.221 "Address Book"
- p.236 "Printing the Counter for Each User"
- p.299 "Counter"

# Programming the LDAP server

This section describes how to specify the LDAP server settings.

This function supports LDAP version 2.0 and 3.0.

Program the LDAP server to find e-mail destinations in the LDAP server Address Book directly.

This function is possible when sending scan files by e-mail using the scanner or fax function.

To start an LDAP search, make sure that the items listed below are set. For other items, check your environment and make any necessary changes.

- Server Name
- Search Base
- Port Number
- Search Conditions
- Authentication

If [Kerberos Authentication] is selected be sure to set the "User Name", "Password", and the "Realm Name".

If [Digest Authentication] or [Cleartext Authentication] is selected be sure to set the "User Name" and "Password".

To use the LDAP server in Administrator Tools, select [On] under "LDAP Search".

The LDAP version 2.0 does not support Digest Authentication.

To select Kerberos Authentication, a realm must be registered in advance.

---

## Programming the LDAP server

---

This section describes how to program the LDAP server.

1. Press [System Settings].
2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [▼Next] twice.
4. Press [Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the LDAP server you want to program or change.  
When programming the server, select [\*Not Programmed].
7. Press [Change] under "Name".
8. Enter the name, and then press [OK].
9. Press [Change] under "Server Name".
10. Enter the server name, and then press [OK].

**11. Press [Change] under "Search Base".**

Select a route folder to start the search from e-mail addresses registered in the selected folder are search targets.

**12. Enter the search base, and then press [OK].**

For example, if the search target is the sales department of ABC company, enter "dc=sales department, o=ABC". (In this example, the description is for an active directory. "dc" is for the organization unit, and "o" is for the company.)

Search base registration may be required depending on your server environment. When registration is required, unspecified searches will result in error.

Check your server environment and enter any required specifications.

**13. Press [Change] under "Port Number".**

Specify the port number for communicating with the LDAP server. Specify a port that is compliant with your environment.

**14. Enter the port number using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.**

When SSL is set to [On], the port number automatically changes to "636".

**15. Press [On] under "Use Secure Connection (SSL)".**

Use SSL to communicate with the LDAP server.

To use SSL, the LDAP server must support SSL.

When SSL is set to [On], the port number automatically changes to "636".

SSL setting must be enabled on this machine. For details, consult your network administrator.

**16. Press [▼Next].**

**17. Select the authentication method.**

To make a search request to the LDAP server, use the administrator account for authentication.

Authentication settings must comply with your server's authentication settings. Check your server settings before setting this machine.

[Digest Authentication] is available only with LDAP Version3.0.

If you select [Cleartext Authentication], a password is sent to the LDAP server as is, without any encryption processing.

If you select [Digest Authentication], a password is sent using an encryption process that prevents passwords from being revealed during transmission to the LDAP server.

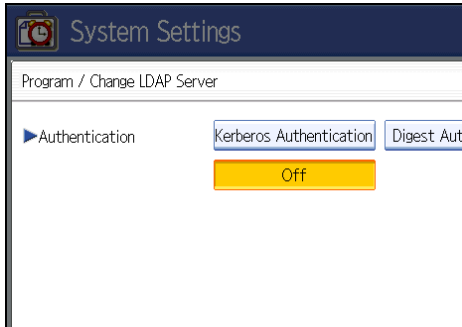
If you select [Kerberos Authentication], a password is sent using an encryption process that prevents passwords from being revealed during transmission to the KDC server where authentication occurs.

If you select [Off], proceed to step 23.

If you select [Digest Authentication] or [Cleartext Authentication], proceed to step 18 to 21, and then proceed to step 23.

If you select [Kerberos Authentication], proceed to step 18 to 22, and then proceed to step 23.





**18. Press [Change] under "User Name".**

When [Kerberos Authentication], [Digest Authentication], or [Cleartext Authentication] is selected for the authentication setting, use the administrator account name and password. Do not enter the administrator account name and password when using authentication for each individual or each search.

**19. Enter the user name, and then press [OK].**

Procedures for the user name setting differ depending on server environment. Check your server environment before making the setting.

Example: Domain Name\User Name, User Name@Domain Name, CN=Name, OU=Department Name, DC=Server Name

**20. Press [Change] under "Password".**

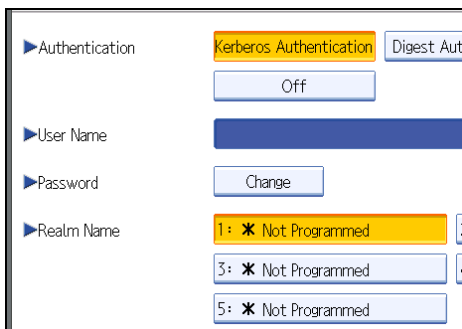
**21. Enter the password, and then press [OK].**

The user name and password are required for administrator authentication to access the LDAP server.

You can connect to the LDAP server using a user name and password stored in the Address Book. For details, see "Registering SMTP and LDAP Authentication".

If you select [Digest Authentication] or [Cleartext Authentication], proceed to step 23.

**22. Select the Realm.**



**23. Press [Connection Test].**

Access the LDAP server to check that the proper connection is established. Check authentication works according to the authentication settings.

**24. Press [Exit].**

If the connection test fails, check your settings and try again.

This function does not check search conditions or the search base.

**25. Press [▼Next].****26. Press [Change] for items you want to use as search conditions from the following: "Name", "E-mail Address", "Fax Number", "Company Name", and "Department Name".**

You can enter an attribute as a typical search keyword. Using the entered attribute, the function searches the LDAP server's Address Book.

**27. Enter the attribute you want to use when searching for e-mail addresses, and then press [OK].**

The attribute value may change depending on the server environment. Check that the attribute value complies with your server environment before setting it.

You can leave items blank, but you cannot leave attributes blank when searching for e-mail addresses from the LDAP server Address Book.

**28. Press [▼Next].****29. Press [Change] under "Attribute".****30. Enter the attribute you want to use when searching for e-mail addresses, and then press [OK].**

The attribute value may change depending on the server environment. Check that the attribute complies with your server environment before setting it.

**31. Press [Change] under "Key Display".****32. Enter the key display, and then press [OK].**

The registered "Key Display" appears as a keyword for searching LDAP.

- Without key display registration

Name	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
Fax Destination	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
E-mail Address	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
Company Name	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
Department Name	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match

- With key display registration

Name	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
Fax Destination	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
E-mail Address	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
Company Name	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
Department Name	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
EmpLOYEENo.	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match

The key does not appear on the search screen unless both "Attribute" and "Key Display" are registered. Make sure you register both to use the optional search.

33. Press [OK].
34. Press [Exit].
35. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Reference

- p.291 "Registering SMTP and LDAP Authentication"

## Changing the LDAP server

This section describes how to change the programmed LDAP server.

1. Press [System Settings].
2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [▼Next] twice.
4. Press [Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the LDAP server you want to change.
7. Change the settings as necessary.
8. Press [OK] after changing each item.
9. Press [Exit].
10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## Deleting the LDAP server

This section describes how to delete the programmed LDAP server.

1. Press [System Settings].

2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [▼Next] twice.
4. Press [Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server].
5. Press [Delete].
6. Select the LDAP server you want to delete.
7. Press [Yes].
8. Press [Exit].
9. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

# Programming the Realm

This section describes how to specify the Realm settings.

Program the realm to be used for Kerberos authentication.

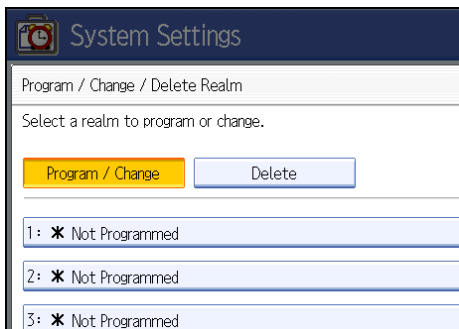
A realm is the network area in which Kerberos authentication is used. After confirming the network environment, specify the necessary items.

You can register up to 5 realms.

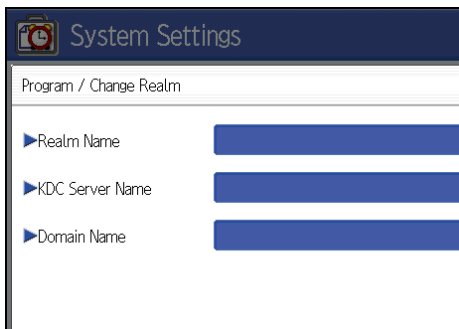
## Programming the Realm

This section describes how to program the Realm.

1. Press [System Settings].
2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [▼Next] twice.
4. Press the [Program / Change / Delete Realm].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.



6. Press [\*Not Programmed].
7. Press [Change] under "Realm Name".



**8. Enter the realm name, and then press [OK].**

Enter the realm name, host name, or IPv4 address.

You can enter a realm name using up to 64 characters.

**9. Press [Change] under "KDC Server Name".**

**10. Enter the KDC server name, and then press [OK].**

Enter the KDC server name, host name, or IPv4 address.

You can enter a KDC server name using up to 64 characters.

**11. Press [Change] under "Domain Name".**

**12. Enter the domain name, and then press [OK].**

Enter the domain name, host name, or IPv4 address.

You can enter a domain name using up to 64 characters.

**13. Press [OK].**

**14. Press [Exit].**

**15. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

---

## Changing the Realm

---

This section describes how to change the programmed Realm.

**1. Press [System Settings].**

**2. Press [Administrator Tools].**

**3. Press [▼Next] twice.**

**4. Press [Program / Change / Delete Realm].**

**5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.**

**6. Select the Realm you want to change.**

**7. To change the realm name, press [Change] under "Realm Name".**

**8. Enter the realm name, and then press [OK].**

You can enter a realm name using up to 64 characters.

**9. To change the KDC server name, press [Change] under "KDC Server Name".**

**10. Enter the KDC server name, and then press [OK].**

You can enter a KDC server name using up to 64 characters.

**11. To change the domain name, press [Change] under "Domain Name".**

**12. Enter the domain name, and then press [OK].**

You can enter a domain name using up to 64 characters.

13. Press [OK].
14. Press [Exit].
15. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

---

## Deleting the Realm

---

**2**

This section describes how to delete the programmed Realm.

1. Press [System Settings].
2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [▼Next] twice.
4. Press [Program / Change / Delete Realm].
5. Press [Delete].
6. Select the realm you want to delete.
7. Press [Yes].
8. Press [Exit].
9. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

# System Settings on Main and Sub-machines

This section explains the System Settings on the two machines during Connect Copy.

When connect copy is in progress, the [User Tools/Counter] keys of the sub-machines remain disabled. To change the default settings, first press [Connect Copy], which is highlighted on main machine's control screen, then clear the connect copy job, and then make the required changes.

2

---

## General Features

---

The following list describes how the default General Features settings on the main and sub-machines will be applied during connect copy.

### Program / Change / Delete User Text

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

### Panel Key Sound

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

### Warm-up Beeper

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

### Copy Count Display

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.
- The copy counter is always displayed as Up (count up).

### Function Priority

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.
- When the Auto Reset time of the main machine has lapsed, Connect Copy will be cancelled. After that, the machine switches back to the mode selected in Function Priority upon reaching the System Reset time.

### Print Priority

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.
- When the Auto Reset time of the main machine has lapsed, Connect Copy will be cancelled. After that, the machine switches back to the mode selected in Function Priority upon reaching the System Reset time.

### Function Reset Timer

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.



---

**Interleave Print**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

**Output: Copier**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

**Output: Document Server**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

**Output: Facsimile**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

**Output: Printer**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

**ADF Original Table Elevation**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

**System Status/Job List Display Time**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

**Time Interval between Printing Jobs**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

**Key Repeat**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

**Z-fold Position**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.
- Make the same settings on both machines.

---

**Tray Paper Settings**

---

The following list describes how the default Tray Paper Settings on the main and sub-machines will be applied during connect copy.

### **Paper Tray Priority: Copier**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

### **Paper Tray Priority: Facsimile**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

### **Paper Tray Priority: Printer**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

### **Printer Bypass Paper Size**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

### **Tray Paper Size: Tray 2 - 3**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.
- Both the main and sub-machines should have the same paper tray settings. Only paper trays with the same size, orientation and paper type can be used in Connect Copy mode.

### **Tray paper Size: LCT**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.
- Both the main and sub-machines should have the same paper tray settings. Only paper trays with the same size, orientation and paper type can be used in Connect Copy mode.

### **Tray Paper Size: Interposer Upper Tray**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

### **Tray Paper Size: Interposer Lower Tray**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

### **Paper Type: Bypass tray**

- The bypass tray can only be used with the Covers and Chapter functions.

### **Paper Type: Tray 2 - 3**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.
- Paper size, orientation, and type settings that match those currently made on both the main and sub-machines can be used for connect copy. To get the most from the connect copy function, we recommend you make the same paper settings on both the main and sub-machines.

**Paper Type: LCT**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.
- Paper size, orientation, and type settings that match those currently made on both the main and sub-machines can be used for connect copy. To get the most from the connect copy function, we recommend you make the same paper settings on both the main and sub-machines.

**Front Cover Sheet Tray**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

**Back Cover Sheet Tray**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

**Slip Sheet Tray**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

**Designation Sheet 1 Tray, Designation Sheet 2 Tray**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

**Separation Sheet Tray**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

---

**Timer Settings**

---

The following list describes how the default Timer Settings on the main and sub-machines will be applied during connect copy.

**Auto Off Timer**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

**Energy Saver Timer**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.
- In Connect Copy mode, neither machine will enter Energy Saver modes (Low Power mode, or Energy Saver mode).

**Panel Off Timer**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

- In Connect Copy mode, neither machine will enter Energy Saver modes (Low Power mode, or Energy Saver mode).

### **System Auto Reset Timer**

- Settings made on the main machine do not affect connect copy. Only sub-machines can be used for interruption copying.
- When the System Reset time has lapsed, Interrupt mode on the sub-machine will be cancelled.

### **Copier / Document Server Auto Reset Timer**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Facsimile Auto Reset Timer**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Printer Auto Reset Timer**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Scanner Auto Reset Timer**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Set Date**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

### **Set Time**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

### **Auto Logout Timer**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Weekly Timer Code**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Weekly Timer: Monday - Sunday**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.
- In Connect Copy mode, Weekly timer settings on the sub-machine will be disabled.

---

## **Administrator Tools**

---

The following list describes how the default Administrator Tools settings on the main and sub-machines will be applied during connect copy.

### **Address Book Management**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

**Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

**Address Book: Change Order**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

**Print Address Book: Destination List**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

**Address Book: Edit Title**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

**Address Book: Switch Title**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

**Back Up / Restore Address Book**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

**Display / Print Counter**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

**Display / Clear / Print Counter per User**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

**User Authentication Management**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

**Administrator Authentication Management**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

**Program / Change Administrator**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

**Extended Security**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

**Auto Delete File in Document Server**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

**Delete All Files in Document Server**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

### **Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **LDAP Search**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Program / Change / Delete Realm**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Firmware Version**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Network Security Level**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Auto Erase Memory Setting**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Erase All Memory**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Transfer Log Setting**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

### **Print Backup: Delete All Files**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Print Backup: Compression**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Print Backup: Default Format**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Print Backup: Default Resolution**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Fixed USB Port**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Machine Data Encryption Settings**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

# 3. Copier/Document Server Features

This chapter describes user tools in the Copier / Document Server Features menu. For details on how to access Copier / Document Server Features, see "Accessing User Tools".

## General Features

This section describes the user tools in the General Features menu under Copier / Document Server Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

### Auto Image Density Priority

You can set whether Auto Image Density is "On" or "Off" when the machine is turned on, reset, or modes are cleared.

The default setting for "Full Color: Photo" is **Off**.

The default setting for "Full Color: Non-photo" is **Off**.

The default setting for "B&W: Photo" is **Off**.

The default setting for "B&W: Non-photo" is **On**.

### Original Type Priority

You can select the original type effective when the power is turned on, or modes cleared.

The default setting for "Full Color" is **Text / Photo**.

The default setting for "B&W" is **Text / Photo**.

### Original Photo Type Priority

When you select "Text / Photo" or "Photo" in "Original Type Priority", you can change the settings of the selected original type.

The default setting for "Text / Photo" is **Printed Photo**.

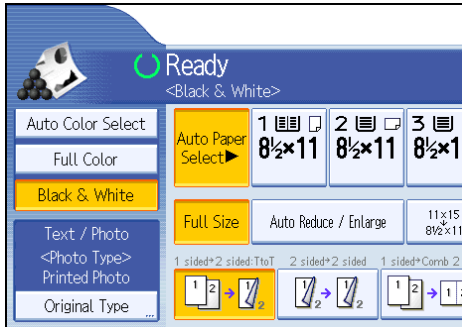
The default setting for "Photo" is **Printed Photo**.

### Original Type Display

You can have the original types shown on the initial display.

The default setting is **Display**.

If you select [Hide], the display is as below.



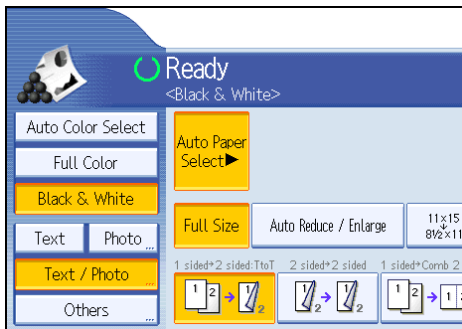
3

**Paper Display**

Choose to have the available paper trays and sizes shown on the initial display.

The default setting is **Display**.

If you select [Hide], the display is shown as below. Press [Auto Paper Select] to display paper sizes.



**Original Orientation in Duplex Mode**

Set the original orientation when making two-sided copies.

The default setting is **Top to Top**.

**Copy Orientation in Duplex Mode**

Set the copy orientation when making two-sided copies.

The default setting is **Top to Top**.

**Max. Copy Quantity**

The maximum copy quantity can be set between 1 and 9999.

The default setting is **9999 sheet(s)**.

**Auto Tray Switching**

If you load paper of the same size in two or more trays, the machine automatically shifts to the other when the first tray runs out of paper (when Auto Paper Select is selected). This function is called "Auto Tray Switching". This setting specifies whether to use Auto Tray Switching or not.

The default setting is **With Image Rotation**.



- **With Image Rotation**  
Use to copy when using the Auto Tray Switching function.
- **Without Image Rotation**  
Only copies with Auto Tray Switching if you load paper of the same size and in the same orientation in two or more trays. If the paper is not the same size or in the same orientation, copying is interrupted and the message "Load paper." is displayed.
- **Off**  
When a paper tray runs out of paper, copying is interrupted and the message "Load paper." is displayed.

### **Alert Sound: Original left on Exposure Glass**

The beeper (Key tone) sounds if you forget to remove originals after copying.

The default setting is **On**.

If Panel Key Sound of General Features (System Settings) is [Off], the beeper does not sound irrespective of the "Alert Sound: Original left on Exposure Glass".

### **Job End Call**

Choose whether or not the beeper sounds when copying is complete.

The default setting is **On**.

If Panel Key Sound of General Features (System Settings) is [On], the machine beeps to notify you that it did not complete a job for reasons such as copying was interrupted, the paper tray ran out of paper, or a paper jam occurred.

### **Connect Copy Key Display**

Specify whether or not to display the key for Connect Copy.

The default setting is **On**.

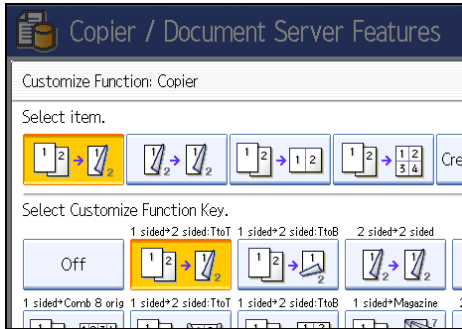
### **Switch Original Counter Display**

Specify the original counter display.

The default setting is **Original Sheet Counter**.

### **Customize Function: Copier**

You can assign up to six frequently-used functions to Copy Function keys.

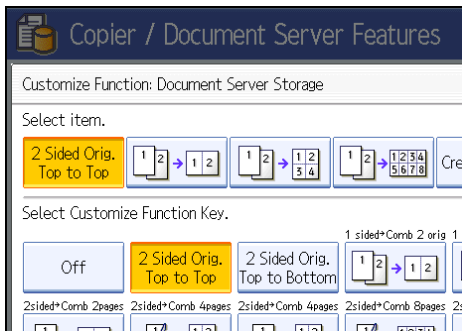


3

- The default setting for "Customize Function: Copier 1" is 1 sided → 2 sided:TtoT.
- The default setting for "Customize Function: Copier 2" is 2 sided → 2 sided.
- The default setting for "Customize Function: Copier 3" is 1 sided → Comb 2 orig.
- The default setting for "Customize Function: Copier 4" is 1 sided → Comb 4 orig.
- The default setting for "Customize Function: Copier 5" is Create Margin.
- The default setting for "Customize Function: Copier 6" has not been set.

**Customize Function: Document Server Storage**

You can assign up to six frequently-used functions for scanning documents on the Document Server Storage keys.



- The default setting for "Customize Function: Document Server Storage 1" is 2 Sided Orig. Top to Top.
- The default setting for "Customize Function: Document Server Storage 2" is 1 sided → Comb 2 orig.
- The default setting for "Customize Function: Document Server Storage 3" is 1 sided → Comb 4 orig.
- The default setting for "Customize Function: Document Server Storage 4" is 1 sided → Comb 8 orig.
- The default setting for "Customize Function: Document Server Storage 5" is Create Margin.
- The default setting for "Customize Function: Document Server Storage 6" has not been set.

**Customize Function: Document Server Print**

You can assign up to six frequently-used functions for printing stored documents on the Document Server Storage keys.

The default setting for "Customize Function: Document Server Print 1" is **Duplex Print Top to Top**.

The default setting for "Customize Function: Document Server Print 2" is **Duplex Print Top to Bottom**.

The default setting for "Customize Function: Document Server Print 3" is **Booklet**.

The default setting for "Customize Function: Document Server Print 4" is **Magazine**.

The default setting for "Customize Function: Document Server Print 5" has not been set.

The default setting for "Customize Function: Document Server Print 6" has not been set.

### Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"
- p.39 "General Features"

# Reproduction Ratio

This section describes the user tools in the Reproduction Ratio menu under Copier / Document Server Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

## Shortcut Reduce/Enlarge

You can register up to three frequently used Reduce / Enlarge ratios other than the fixed Reduce / Enlarge ratio and have them shown on the initial display. You can also change registered Reduce / Enlarge ratios.

When you select [User Reduce/Enlarge Ratio], the ratio can be set from 25.0 to 400.0%, using the number keys.

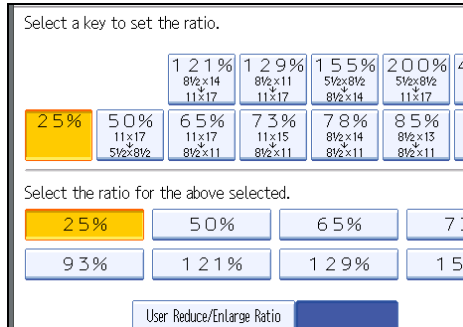
The default setting for "F1" is **71%** (Metric version) / **73%** (Inch version).

The default setting for "F2" is **141%** (Metric version) / **155%** (Inch version).

The default setting for "F3" is **93%**.

## Reproduction Ratio

Specify the enlargement and reduction ratios that appear if [Reduce / Enlarge] is pressed on the copier screen.



- Metric version
  - 25%
  - A3 → A5, 8"×13" → A5 (50%)
  - A3 → 8"×13" (65%)
  - A3 → A4, A4 → A5 (71%)
  - B4JIS → 8"×13" (75%)
  - 8"×13" → A4, B4JIS → 8"×13" (82%)
  - 93%
  - B4JIS → A3 (115%)
  - 8"×13" → A3, A4 → B4JIS (122%)

- A4 → A3, A5 → A4 (141%)
- A5 → A3 (200%)
- 400%
- User R / E Ratio (25-400%)
- Inch version
  - 25%
  - 11"×17" → 5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" (50%)
  - 11"×17" → 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"×11" (65%)
  - 11"×15" → 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"×11" (73%)
  - 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"×14" → 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"×11" (78%)
  - 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"×13" → 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"×11" (85%)
  - 93%
  - 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"×14" → 11"×17" (121%)
  - 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"×11" → 11"×17" (129%)
  - 5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" → 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"×14" (155%)
  - 5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" → 11"×17" (200%)
  - 400%
  - User R / E Ratio (25-400%)

### Reduce/Enlarge Ratio Priority

You can set the ratio that has priority when [Reduce / Enlarge] is pressed.

The default setting is **71%** (Metric version) / **73%** (Inch version).

### Ratio for Create Margin

You can set a Reduce / Enlarge ratio when registering Create Margin in a shortcut key.

Enter a ratio using number keys (in the range of 90 to 99%).

The default setting is **93%**.

### Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

# Edit

This section describes the user tools in the Edit menu under Copier / Document Server Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

Enter the width of the binding margin with the number keys as follows:

- Metric version: 0~30 mm (in increments of 1 mm)
- Inch version: 0"-1.2" (in increments of 0.1 inch)

Enter the width of the erased margin with the number keys as follows:

- Metric version: 2~99 mm (in increments of 1 mm)
- Inch version: 0.1"-3.9" (in increments of 0.1 inch)

An image of approximately 1.5 mm (0.06") will not be displayed as the width of the separation line, when specifying solid or broken lines.

## Front Margin: Left / Right

Specify left and right margins on the front side of copies in Margin Adjustment mode.

The default setting is **Left, 5 mm** (Metric version) / **Left, 0.2"** (Inch version).

## Back Margin: Left / Right

Specify left and right margins on the back side of copies in Margin Adjustment mode.

The default setting is **Right, 5 mm** (Metric version) / **Right, 0.2"** (Inch version).

## Front Margin: Top / Bottom

Specify top and bottom margins on the front side of copies in Margin Adjustment mode.

The default setting is **T/B: 0 mm** (Metric version) / **T/B: 0.0"** (Inch version).

## Back Margin: Top/Bottom

Specify top and bottom margins on the back side of copies in Margin Adjustment mode.

The default setting is **T/B: 0 mm** (Metric version) / **T/B: 0.0"** (Inch version).

## 1 Sided → 2 Sided Auto Margin: TtoT

In 1 sided to 2 sided Duplex mode, you can specify the margins on the back side.

The margin is set to the same value of "Back Margin: Left/Right".

The default setting is **Right, 5 mm** (Metric version) / **Right, 0.2"** (Inch version).

## 1 Sided → 2 Sided Auto Margin: TtoB

In 1 sided to 2 sided Duplex mode, you can specify the margins on the back side.

The value set for "Back Margin: Top/Bottom" is used.

The default setting is **T/B: 0 mm** (Metric version) / **T/B: 0.0"** (Inch version).

### Creep Setting for Magazine

Specify the creep binding margin width.

The default setting is **5 mm** (Metric version) / **0.2"** (Inch version).

### Erase Border Width

Specify the width of the erased border margins with this function.

The default setting is **10 mm** (Metric version) / **0.4"** (Inch version).

### Erase Original Shadow in Combine

In Combine mode, you can specify whether to erase a 3 mm, 0.1" boundary margin around all four edges of each original.

The default setting is **On**.

### Erase Center Width

Specify the width of the erased center margins with this function.

The default setting is **10 mm** (Metric version) / **0.4"** (Inch version).

### Front Cover Copy in Combine

You can make a combined copy on the front cover sheet when you select Front Cover mode.

Combine				Not Combined				
1	2	5	6	1	2	3	6	7
3	4	7	8	4	5	8		

BBM013S

The default setting is **Combine**.

### Copy Order in Combine

You can set the copy order in Combine mode to Left to Right or Top to Bottom.

From Left to Right	From Top to Bottom																
<table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>4</td></tr> </table>	1	2	3	4	<table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>3</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>4</td></tr> </table>	1	3	2	4								
1	2																
3	4																
1	3																
2	4																
<table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td>4</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>6</td><td>7</td><td>8</td></tr> </table>	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	<table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>3</td><td>5</td><td>7</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>4</td><td>6</td><td>8</td></tr> </table>	1	3	5	7	2	4	6	8
1	2	3	4														
5	6	7	8														
1	3	5	7														
2	4	6	8														

GCAH090E

The default setting is **From Left to Right**.

### Orientation: Booklet, Magazine

Select the opening orientation of copies made using Booklet or Magazine mode.

The default setting is **Open to Left**.

### Copy on Designating Page in Combine

Specify whether to make a combined copy on the inserted slip sheets in Desig./Chapter mode.

The default setting is **Combine**.

### Image Repeat Separation Line

You can select a separation line and color using the Image Repeat function from: None, Solid, Broken A, Broken B, or Crop Marks.

- None



- Solid



- Broken A



- Broken B



- Crop Marks





The default setting is **None**.

Separation line color cannot be specified when selecting [None].

In "Black & White", printing will be done in black.

Selecting solid or broken lines might produce a blank area of approximately 1.5 mm (0.06") in width along the separation line.

3

### Double Copies Separation Line

You can select a separation line and color using the Double Copies function from: None, Solid, Broken A, Broken B, or Crop Marks.

- None



- Solid



- Broken A



- Broken B



- Crop Marks



3

The default setting is **None**.

Separation line color cannot be specified when selecting [None].

In "Black & White", printing will be done in black.

Selecting solid or broken lines might produce a blank area of approximately 1.5 mm (0.06") in width along the separation line.

### Separation Line in Combine

You can select a separation line and color using the Combine function from: None, Solid, Broken A, Broken B, or Crop Marks.

- None



- Solid



- Broken A



- Broken B



- Crop Marks



The default setting is **None**.

Separation line color cannot be specified when selecting [None].

In "Black & White", printing will be done in black.

Selecting solid or broken lines might produce a blank area of approximately 1.5 mm (0.06") in width along the separation line.

### Copy Back Cover

When Copying the back cover, you can specify whether to have the back cover outside (outside page) or inside (inside page).

The default setting is **Outside**.

#### Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

# Stamp

This section describes the user tools in the Stamp menu under Copier / Document Server Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

---

## Background Numbering

---

3

This section describes the user tools in the Background Numbering menu under Stamp.

### Size

You can set the size of the numbers.

The default setting is **Normal**.

### Density

You can set the density of the numbers.

The default setting is **Normal**.

### Stamp Color

You can set the color of the numbers.

The default setting is **Black**.

---

## Preset Stamp

---

This section describes the user tools in the Preset Stamp menu under Stamp.

### Stamp Language

You can select the language of the message printed in Stamp mode.

- English, German, French, Italian, Spanish, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Czech, Swedish, Finnish, Hungarian, Norwegian, Danish, Russian, Japanese, Simplified Chinese, Traditional Chinese, Hangul, Catalan, Turkish

The default setting is **English**.

### Stamp Priority

You can select the stamp type given priority when [Preset Stamp] is pressed.

The default setting is **COPY**.

### Stamp Format

Specify how each stamp is printed.

- Stamp Position  
Specify where to print the stamp.

The default setting is **Top Right**.

- Adjust Stamp Position

You can adjust the position of the stamp within the available ranges shown below.

- Metric version:

"Top Left"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Top Center"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 72-72mm

"Top Right"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Center Left"-T/B: 72-72mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Center"-T/B: 72-72mm, L/R: 72-72mm

"Center Right"-T/B: 72-72mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Bottom Left"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Bottom Center"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 72-72mm

"Bottom Right"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

- Inch version:

"Top Left"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

"Top Center"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 2.8"-2.8"

"Top Right"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

"Center Left"-T/B: 2.8"-2.8", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

"Center"-T/B: 2.8"-2.8", L/R: 2.8"-2.8"

"Center Right"-T/B: 2.8"-2.8", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

"Bottom Left"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

"Bottom Center"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 2.8"-2.8"

"Bottom Right"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

- Size

You can set the size of the stamp.

The default setting is **1X**.

- Density

You can set the pattern used to print the stamp.

- Normal

The stamp is printed on the image. You cannot check which parts will overlap.

- Lighter

The image can be seen through the stamp.

- Lightest

The image appears even clearer than in the Lighter setting.

The default setting is **Normal**.

- Page to Stamp

You can have the stamp printed on the first page or all pages.

The default setting is **All Pages**.

### Stamp Color

Sets the stamp print color.

The default setting is **Black**.

3

---

## User Stamp

---

This section describes the user tools in the User Stamp menu under Stamp.

### Program/Delete Stamp

You can register, change, or delete user stamps.

You can register up to four custom stamps with your favorite designs.

For details about how to program the User Stamp, see "User Stamp", Copy / Document Server Reference.

### Stamp Format: 1-4

Specify how each registered User Stamps 1 to 4 is printed.

- Stamp Position

Specify where to print the User Stamp.

The default setting is **Top Right**.

- Adjust Stamp Position

You can adjust the position of the User Stamp within the available ranges shown below.

- Metric version:

"Top Left"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Top Center"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 72-72mm

"Top Right"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Center Left"-T/B: 72-72mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Center"-T/B: 72-72mm, L/R: 72-72mm

"Center Right"-T/B: 72-72mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Bottom Left"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Bottom Center"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 72-72mm

"Bottom Right"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

- Inch version:
  - "Top Left"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"
  - "Top Center"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 2.8"-2.8"
  - "Top Right"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"
  - "Center Left"-T/B: 2.8"-2.8", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"
  - "Center"-T/B: 2.8"-2.8", L/R: 2.8"-2.8"
  - "Center Right"-T/B: 2.8"-2.8", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"
  - "Bottom Left"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"
  - "Bottom Center"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 2.8"-2.8"
  - "Bottom Right"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"
- Page to Stamp
  - Sets whether to print the stamp on all pages or only the first page.
  - The default setting is **All Pages**.

### Stamp Color: 1-4

- Sets the color registered in User Stamp color (1 to 4).
- The default setting is **Black**.

---

## Date Stamp

---

This section describes the user tools in the Date Stamp menu under Stamp.

### Format

- You can select the date format for Date Stamp mode.
- The default setting is **DD / MM / YYYY** (Metric version) / **MM / DD / YYYY** (Inch version).

### Font

- You can select the Date Stamp font.
- The default setting is **Font 1**.

### Size

- You can set the Date Stamp size.
- The default setting is **Auto**.

### Superimpose

- You can have the Date Stamp printed in white when it overlaps black parts of the image.
- The default setting is **Off**.

### Stamp Color

- Sets the selected priority color when printing the date.

The default setting is **Black**.

### Stamp Setting

Specify how Date Stamp is printed.

- Stamp Position

Specify where to print the Date Stamp.

The default setting is **Top Left**.

- Adjust Stamp Position

You can adjust the position of the Date Stamp within the available ranges shown below.

- Metric version:

"Top Left"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Top Center"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 72-72mm

"Top Right"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Bottom Left"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Bottom Center"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 72-72mm

"Bottom Right"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

- Inch version:

"Top Left"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

"Top Center"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 2.8"-2.8"

"Top Right"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

"Bottom Left"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

"Bottom Center"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 2.8"-2.8"

"Bottom Right"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

- Page to Stamp

Sets whether to print the stamp on all pages or only the first page.

The default setting is **All Pages**.

---

## Page Numbering

---

This section describes the user tools in the Page Numbering menu under Stamp.

### Stamp Format

You can select the page number format given priority when [Page Numbering] is pressed.

The default setting is **P1, P2...**

### Font

You can select the page number printed in Page Numbering mode.



The default setting is **Font 1**.

### Size

You can set the size of the stamp printed in Page Numbering mode.

The default setting is **Auto**.

### Duplex Back Page Stamping Position

You can set the position of the duplex back page number printed in Duplex mode.

The default setting is **Opposite Position**.

### Page Numbering in Combine

You can set page numbering when using the Combine function and the Page Numbering function together.

The default setting is **Per Original**.

### Stamp on Designating Slip Sheet

You can select to print the page number onto slip sheets when using the Designate function set to "Copy" and the Page Numbering function together.

The default setting is **Off**.

### Stamp Position

Specify how each of stamp is printed.

- Stamp Position  
Specify where to print the stamp.
- Adjust Stamp Position

You can adjust the position of the stamp within the available ranges shown below.

- Metric version:
  - "Top Left"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm
  - "Top Center"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 72-72mm
  - "Top Right"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm
  - "Bottom Left"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm
  - "Bottom Center"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 72-72mm
  - "Bottom Right"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm
- Inch version:
  - "Top Left"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"
  - "Top Center"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 2.8"-2.8"
  - "Top Right"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"
  - "Bottom Left"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"
  - "Bottom Center"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 2.8"-2.8"

"Bottom Right"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

### Superimpose

You can have page numbers printed in white when they overlap black parts of the image.

The default setting is **Off**.

### Stamp Color

Sets the selected priority color when printing the page number.

The default setting is **Black**.

### Page Numbering Initial Letter

You can select the page numbering initial letter between "P1, P2.../P.1, P.2..." and "S1, S2.../S.1, S.2...".

The default setting is **P1,P2.../P.1,P.2....**

3

---

## Stamp Text

---

This section describes the user tools in the Stamp Text menu under Stamp.

### Font

You can select the Stamp Text font.

The default setting is **Font 1**.

### Size

You can set the Stamp Text size.

The default setting is **Auto**.

### Superimpose

You can have the Stamp Text printed in white when it overlaps black parts of the image.

The default setting is **Off**.

### Stamp Color

Sets the selected priority color when printing the text.

### Stamp Setting

Specify how Date Stamp is printed.

- Stamp Position  
Specify where to print the Date Stamp.  
The default setting is **Top Right**.

- Stamp Position  
You can adjust the position of the Date Stamp within the available ranges shown below.
  - Metric version:

"Top Left"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Top Center"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 72-72mm

"Top Right"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Bottom Left"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

"Bottom Center"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 72-72mm

"Bottom Right"-T/B: 4-144mm, L/R: 4-144mm

- Inch version:

"Top Left"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

"Top Center"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 2.8"-2.8"

"Top Right"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

"Bottom Left"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

"Bottom Center"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 2.8"-2.8"

"Bottom Right"-T/B: 0.1"-5.7", L/R: 0.1"-5.7"

- Page to Stamp

Sets whether to print the stamp on all pages or only the first page.

The default setting is **All Pages**.

## Input/Output

This section describes the user tools in the Input/Output menu under Copier / Document Server Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

### Switch to Batch

You can select to have Batch mode or SADF mode displayed when you press [Special Original].

The default setting is **Batch**.

3

### SADF Auto Reset

In SADF mode, an original must be set within a specified time after the previous original has been fed.

The default setting is **5 second(s)**.

You can adjust this time from 3 to 99 seconds in increments of 1 second.

### Rotate Sort: Auto Paper Continue

Specify to continue copying when paper of the required orientation has run out during rotate sort.

The default setting is **Off**.

- On

Copying continues using copy paper of a different orientation. The copy job will finish even if you have left the machine.

- Off

When paper of the required orientation runs out, the machine stops copying and prompts you to supply copy paper. After you have loaded paper, the machine will continue copying.

### Copy Eject Face Method in Glass Mode

You can specify the way in which copies are delivered when copying an original placed on the exposure glass.

The default setting is **Face Up**.

### Copy Eject Face Method in Bypass Mode

You can specify the way in which copies are delivered when copying in bypass mode.

The default setting is **Face Up**.

### Memory Full Auto Scan Restart

When memory becomes full while scanning originals, the machine can make copies of scanned originals first, and then automatically proceed scanning remaining originals.

The default setting is **Off**.

- On

You can leave the machine unattended to make copies, but sorted pages will not be sequential.

- Off

When memory becomes full, the machine stops operation allowing you to remove the copy pages delivered on the output tray.

### Insert Separation Sheet

You can specify the number of copy pages for inserting the separation sheet from 1 to 999 pages in increments of 1 page.

The default setting is **1 set(s)**.

### Letterhead Setting

If you select [Yes] in this function, the machine rotates the image correctly.

The default setting is **No**.

Orientation-fixed (top to bottom) or two-sided paper might not be printed correctly depending on how the originals and paper are placed.

### Staple Position

Specify which Top 2 staples or Bottom shown on the initial display with priority.

The optional Finisher SR4010, Finisher SR4020, Finisher SR5000 is required to use this function.

- When the Finisher SR4010 is installed:
  - The default setting for "Staple Position 1" is **Top 1**.
  - The default setting for "Staple Position 2" is **Slant**.
  - The default setting for "Staple Position 3" is **Left 2**.
  - The default setting for "Staple Position 4" is **Top 2**.
- When the Finisher SR4020 is installed:
  - The default setting for "Staple Position 1" is **Top 1**.
  - The default setting for "Staple Position 2" is **Center**.
  - The default setting for "Staple Position 3" is **Left 2**.
  - The default setting for "Staple Position 4" is **Top 2**.
- When the Finisher SR5000 is installed:
  - The default setting for "Staple Position 1" is **Top 1**.
  - The default setting for "Staple Position 2" is **Slant**.
  - The default setting for "Staple Position 3" is **Left 2**.
  - The default setting for "Staple Position 4" is **Top 2**.

### Punch Type

Specify which punch type (2 holes or 3 holes) has priority to be shown on the initial display.

The optional finisher is required to use this function.

The default setting for "Punch Type 1" is **2 Holes Left**.

The default setting for "Punch Type 2" is **2 Holes Top**.

### Simplified Screen: Finishing Types

You can select which key is displayed with higher priority for "Finishing Types" on the Simplified Screen.

The default setting for "Simplified Screen: Finishing Types 1" has not been set.

The default setting for "Simplified Screen: Finishing Types 2" has not been set.

The default setting for "Simplified Screen: Finishing Types 3" has not been set.

#### Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

# Adjust Color Image

This section describes the user tools in the Adjust Color Image menu under Copier/Document Server Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

## Background Density of ADS (Full Color)

The background density is adjusted to skip the texture and copy. You can adjust the background density up to 5 levels when in Full Color.

The default setting is the middle of 5 adjustment levels.

## Color Sensitivity

You can adjust the color specified to convert in "Color Convert" and the color specified for "Erase Color", in 5 levels.

The default setting is the middle of 5 adjustment levels.

When the color width has been set to "Wider", and the color to be deleted, for example is red, all the colors that are close to magenta and orange are deleted. If it's set to "Narrower" the color red will be deleted.

## A.C.S. Sensitivity

This 5-step setting determines the level of the standard used for discriminating between black & white originals and full color originals when "Auto Color Select" is selected.

The default setting is the middle of 5 adjustment levels.

## A.C.S. Priority

This setting determines the copy priority between "Black & White" and "Full Color" when "Auto Color Select" is selected.

The default setting is **Full Color**.

## Inkjet Output Type

When copying inkjet paper documents, specify the final image quality appropriate to the color of the document.

This setting is effective after you select [Inkjet Output] under [Others] (copier function screen).

The default setting is **Inkjet Output 1**.

When copying paper documents printed on a regular color inkjet printer, select [Inkjet Output 1].

Increase image redness, select [Inkjet Output 2].

Increase image blueness, select [Inkjet Output 3].

## Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

## Settings for the Document Server

This section describes user tool settings for the Document Server.

For details, see "System Settings", and "Copier/Document Server Features".

### Copier/Document Server Features

Heading	Item	Default
General Features	Customize Function: Document Server Storage	<b>2 Sided Orig. Top to Top</b>
General Features	Customize Function: Document Server Storage	<b>1 sided → Comb 2 orig</b>
General Features	Customize Function: Document Server Storage	<b>1 sided → Comb 4 orig</b>
General Features	Customize Function: Document Server Storage	<b>1 sided → Comb 8 orig</b>
General Features	Customize Function: Document Server Storage	<b>Create Margin</b>
General Features	Customize Function: Document Server Storage	-
General Features	Customize Function: Document Server Print	<b>Duplex Print Top to Top</b>
General Features	Customize Function: Document Server Print	<b>Duplex Print Top to Bottom</b>
General Features	Customize Function: Document Server Print	<b>Booklet</b>
General Features	Customize Function: Document Server Print	<b>Magazine</b>
General Features	Customize Function: Document Server Print	-
General Features	Customize Function: Document Server Print	-



## System Settings

Heading	Items	Default
General Features	Warm-up Beeper	On
General Features	Copy Count Display	Up
General Features	Output: Document Server	Copy Tray
Tray Paper Settings	Paper Tray Priority: Copier	Tray 1
Tray Paper Settings	Front Cover Sheet Tray	Off
Tray Paper Settings	Back Cover Sheet Tray	Off
Tray paper Settings	Slip Sheet Tray	Off
Tray paper Settings	Designation Sheet 1 Tray, Designation Sheet 2 tray	Off
Tray paper Settings	Separation Sheet Tray	Off
Timer Settings	Copier / Document Server Auto Reset Timer	60 second(s)
Administrator Tools	Auto Delete File in Document Server	3 day(s)
Administrator Tools	Delete All Files in Document Server	-

### Reference

- p.39 "System Settings"
- p.93 "Copier/Document Server Features"

# Copier/Document Server Features on Main and Sub-machines

This section explains the Copier/Document Server Features on the two machines during Connect Copy. While connect copy is under way, the [User Tools/Counter] keys of the sub-machines remain disabled. To change the default settings, first press [Connect Copy], which is highlighted on main machine's control screen, then clear the connect copy job, and then make the required changes.

## 3

---

### General Features

---

The following list describes how the default General Features settings on the main and sub-machines will be applied during connect copy.

#### Auto Image Density Priority

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

#### Original Type Priority

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

#### Original Photo Type Priority

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

#### Original Type Display

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

#### Paper Display

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

#### Original Orientation in Duplex Mode

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

#### Copy Orientation in Duplex Mode

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

#### Max. Copy Quantity

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

### **Auto Tray Switching**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

### **Alert Sound: Original Left on Exposure Glass**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

### **Job End Call**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.
- When [On] is selected, only the main machine beeper sounds.

### **Connect Copy Key Display**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machines also apply their own respective settings.

### **Switch Original Counter Display**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

### **Customize Function: Copier**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

### **Customize Function: Document Server Storage**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

### **Customize Function: Document Server Print**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

---

## **Reproduction Ratio**

---

The following list describes how the default Reproduction Ratio settings on the main and sub-machines will be applied during connect copy.

### **Shortcut Reduce / Enlarge**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

### **Reproduction Ratio**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

### **Reduce / Enlarge Ratio Priority**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

### **Ratio for Create Margin**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

---

## **3**

---

### **Edit**

---

The following list describes how the default Edit settings on the main and sub-machines will be applied during connect copy.

#### **Front Margin: Left / Right**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.
- Settings made on the main machine are applied.

#### **Back Margin: Left / Right**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.
- Settings made on the main machine are applied.

#### **Front Margin: Top / Bottom**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.
- Settings made on the main machine are applied.

#### **Back Margin: Top / Bottom**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.
- Settings made on the main machine are applied.

#### **1 Sided → 2 Sided Auto Margin: TtoT**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.
- Settings made on the main machine are applied.

#### **1 Sided → 2 Sided Auto Margin: TtoB**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.
- Settings made on the main machine are applied.

### **Creep Setting for Magazine**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.
- Settings made on the main machine are applied.

### **Erase Border Width**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.
- Settings made on the main machine are applied.

### **Erase Original Shadow in Combine**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Erase Center Width**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Front Cover Copy in Combine**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Copy Order in Combine**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Orientation: Booklet, Magazine**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Copy on Designating Page in Combine**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Image Repeat Separation Line**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Double Copies Separation Line**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Separation Line in Combine**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Copy Back Cover

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.
- Settings made on the main machine are applied.

---

## Stamp

---

The following list describes how the default Stamp settings on the main and sub-machines will be applied during connect copy.

3

### Background Numbering

---

#### Size

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

#### Density

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

#### Stamp Color

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Preset Stamp

---

#### Stamp Language

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

#### Stamp Priority

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

#### Stamp Format

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

#### Stamp Color

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

## User Stamp

---

### Program / Delete Stamp

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Stamp Format: 1-4

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Stamp Color: 1-4

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

## Date Stamp

---

### Format

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Font

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Size

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Superimpose

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Stamp Color

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Stamp Setting

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

## Page Numbering

---

### Stamp Format

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Font

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Size

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Duplex Back Page Stamping Position

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Page Numbering in Combine

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Stamp on Designating Slip Sheet

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Stamp Position

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Superimpose

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Stamp Color

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Page Numbering Initial Letter

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

## Stamp Text

---

### Font

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### Size

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.



### **Superimpose**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Stamp Color**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Stamp Setting**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

3

---

## **Input/Output**

---

The following list describes how the default Input/Output settings on the main and sub-machines will be applied during connect copy.

### **Switch to Batch**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **SADF Auto Reset**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

### **Rotate Sort: Auto Paper Continue**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.
- This function is effective when Auto Tray Switching in User Tools (System Settings) is set to "On (Rotate)".

### **Copy Eject Face Method in Glass Mode**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Copy Eject Face Method in Bypass Mode**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.

### **Memory Full Auto Scan Restart**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Insert Separation Sheet**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Letterhead Setting**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Staple Position**

- The main machine applies the setting that has been made on it. Sub-machine settings do not affect connect copy.

### **Punch Type**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Simplified Screen: Finishing Types**

- Settings made on the main and sub-machines do not affect the connect copy.
- The connect copy function is not available from the simple display.

---

## **Adjust Color Image**

---

The following list describes how the default Adjust Color Image settings on the main and sub-machines will be applied during connect copy.

### **Background Density of ADS (Full Color)**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Color Sensitivity**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **A.C.S. Sensitivity**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **A.C.S. Priority**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

### **Inkjet Output Type**

- The main machine applies the settings that have been made on it. Sub-machines also apply the settings made on the main machine, regardless of the settings made on them.

# 4. Facsimile Features

This chapter describes user tools in the Facsimile Features menu. For details on how to access Facsimile Features, see "Accessing User tools".

## General Settings

This section describes the user tools in the General Settings menu under Facsimile Features.

### Quick Operation Key (1-3)

Frequently used functions programmed as Quick Operation keys are shown on the menu immediately after the power is turned on.

If [On] is selected, the Quick Operation keys can be programmed with the following items:

- On
  - Manual E-mail RX
  - Send Later
  - Subject
  - Text
  - Recept. Notice
  - E-mail TX Results
  - BCC transmission
  - Std. Message
  - Fax Header Print
  - Label Insertion
  - Closed Network
  - SUB Code TX
  - SEP Code Reception
  - Print Memory Lock
  - TX File Status
  - RX File Status
  - Journal
  - Print Stored RX File
  - TX Status Report
  - Forwarding
  - Switch RX Mode
- Off

Up to three functions can be programmed to Quick Operation keys.

Functions that appear dimmed have already been set.

The default setting for Quick Operation key 1 has not been set.

The default setting for Quick Operation key 2 is **TX File Status**.

The default setting for Quick Operation key 3 is **RX File Status**.

### Switch Title

Select the title to be shown on the destination list.

The default setting is **Title 1**.

### Search Destination

Select a destination list to be used in "Search Destination".

You can select from the Address Book, or a registered LDAP Server.

To search from an LDAP server, it is necessary to register the LDAP server in [System Settings] and set [LDAP Search] to [On].

The default setting is **Address Book**.

For details about "LDAP Search", see "Administrator Tools".

### Communication Page Count

Checks the transmission and reception, and totals on the display.

- Pages Sent:  
Total number of transmitted pages
  - Pages Received:  
Total number of received pages
1. Press [Facsimile Features].
  2. Press [General Settings].
  3. Press [Communication Page Count].
  4. After checking the display, press [Exit].
  5. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### Adjust Sound Volume

Adjust the sound volume during On Hook Mode and Immediate Transmission.

The default setting for sound volume is **level 2**.

### Box Setting

The following functions are for delivery and transfer of documents:

- Personal Box
- Information Box

- Transfer Box

For details about Box Setting, see "Box Settings".

**Box Setting: Print List**

You can print a list of the currently registered Personal Boxes, Information Boxes, and Transfer Boxes.

**On Hook Mode Release Time**

Use this function to specify a time to cancel On Hook mode after you transmit using On Hook dialing.

The default setting is **3 minutes**.

**Reference**

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"
- p.68 "Administrator Tools"
- p.186 "Box Settings"

# Scan Settings

This section describes the user tools in the Scan Settings menu under Facsimile Features.

## **Program / Change / Delete Scan Size**

You can program, change, or cancel frequently used scan sizes.

For details about programming Scan Size, see "Program / Change / Delete Scan Size".

### **Reference**

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"
- p.152 "Program / Change / Delete Scan Size"

# Send Settings

This section describes the user tools in the Send Settings menu under Facsimile Features.

## Max. E-mail Size

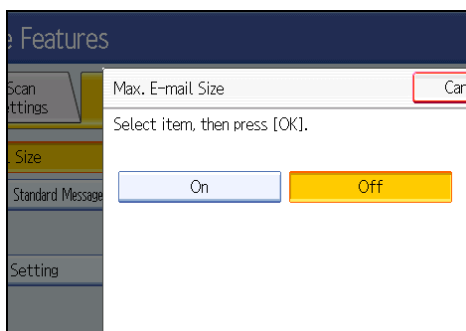
When the other party has a limit on the size of e-mail messages that can be received, or sending data heavy e-mail causes problems, you can make settings to limit the size of sent e-mail. When this function is set to on, transmission of e-mail that exceeds the set size is aborted.

The default setting is **Off**.

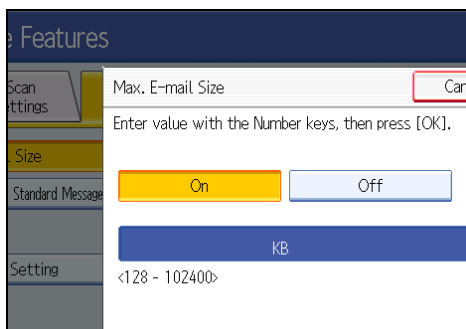
When e-mail exceeds the maximum file size, an Error Report is output, and the e-mail is deleted.

Even when e-mail does not exceed the size limit, it may be rejected if it does not meet the requirements of the server settings.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Send Settings].
3. Press [Max. E-mail Size].
4. Press [On].



5. Enter the maximum e-mail size using the number keys.



Maximum e-mail size can be between 128 and 102,400 KB.

If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then enter again.

6. Press [OK].

### Program / Change / Delete Standard Message

Program standard messages to be printed at the top of the first page of the original of the opposite party. It is useful for personalizing messages such as sending greetings.

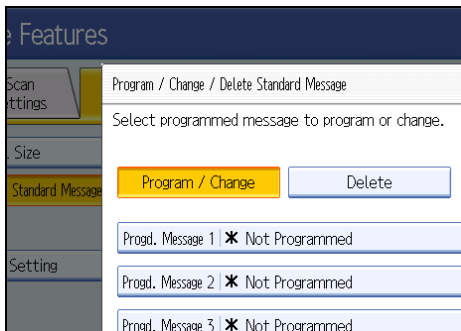
You can program three standard messages. You cannot change the "Confidential", "Urgent", "Please phone", or "Copy to corres. section" messages.

The procedure is the same for both programming and changing.

For details about how to enter the text, see "Entering Text", About this Machine.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Send Settings].
3. Press [Program / Change / Delete Standard Message].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

To delete the registered message, press [Delete].



5. Select the message you want to program or change.

To delete the registered message, select the message you want to delete, and then press [Delete].

6. Enter a new message.

For details about entering text, see "Entering Text", About This Machine.

7. Press [OK].

To cancel a registration, press [Cancel].

8. Press [Exit].

9. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### Backup File TX Setting

You can specify whether or not to send to a selected folder the backup of a file sent by Memory Transmission.

By setting [Backup File TX Setting] to [On] and selecting the destination folder, you can automatically send to the selected folder the backup of a file sent by Memory Transmission using the machine's control panel, Web Image Monitor, DeskTopBinder, or LAN-Fax.

Select the destination folder for the backup file from the address book.



The default setting is **Off**.

If you set [Backup File TX Setting] to [On] but the Backup File TX fails, the machine automatically prints a backup file TX communication failure report.

Using the parameter settings (switch 37 bit 2,3), you can select whether to print the backup file if the Backup File TX fails.

The backup file format will be the same as that specified for files forwarded to folder destinations. Using the parameter settings (switch: 21, bit: 3), select TIFF or PDF as the format for sending a file. The format is factory-preset to TIFF.

Using the parameter settings, you can specify the redial interval (switch 35, bits 0-7) and the maximum number of redials (switch 36, bits 0-7). The redial interval is factory-preset to 15 minutes; the maximum number of redials, to 192.

Using the parameter settings, (switch 37, bit 0) you can specify whether to stop sending a backup file if the destination folder becomes full while the machine is sending or waiting to send a fax or the backup file.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Send Settings].
3. Press [Backup File TX Setting].
4. Press [On].

If there is a folder already programmed, a folder name is shown. If you want to change the folder, press [Folder] and proceed to step 5.

5. Specify a folder for back up, and then press [OK].

The folder name is shown to the right of [Folder].

6. Press [OK].
7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"
- p.163 "Parameter Settings"

# Reception Settings

This section describes the user tools in the Reception Settings menu under Facsimile Features.

## Switch Reception Mode

Specify the method for receiving fax documents.

The default setting is **Auto Reception**.

## Program Special Sender

By programming particular receivers as Special Sender in advance, you can have Special Senders treated differently.

For details about how to program Special Sender, see "Special Senders to Treat Differently".

4

## Program Special Sender: Print List

You can print the Special Sender List.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Reception Settings].
3. Press [Program Special Sender: Print List].
4. Press the [Start] key.

To cancel printing a list before pressing the [Start] key, press [Cancel] or the [Clear/Stop] key.

5. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## Forwarding

Specify whether or not received fax documents are to be forwarded to a programmed receiver.

The default setting is **Off**.

For details about Forwarding, see "Forwarding".

## Reception File Setting

Select whether received documents are saved on the hard disk to be printed later or printed immediately without being saved.

The default setting is **Print**.

For details about Reception File Setting, see "Reception File Setting".

## Stored Reception File User Setting

The administrator can be specified for managing documents stored on the machine after fax documents are received. To specify the administrator, enter the administrator user code for managing documents using Web Image Monitor or DeskTopBinder.

You must register the administrator's User Code to the destination list in advance.

This function is only available when [Store] is selected in "Reception File Setting".

It is recommended that you use Web Image Monitor operating under the same network environment as this machine. Otherwise, the Web browser may not open and an error may occur.

The default setting is **Off**.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Reception Settings].
3. Press [Stored Reception File User Setting].
4. If you want to use a user code, press [On].
5. Press the Destination key of the user you wish to specify, and then press [OK].
6. Check the selected user, and then press [OK].

When a programmed user is deleted from the destination list, message "Deleted from Address Book" is displayed. Enter the user again.

7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

If the programmed user code was deleted using the Address Book Management function under System Settings, you cannot view received and saved documents using Web Image Monitor. Select [Off] in step 4 or reprogram the user code.

### SMTP RX File Delivery Settings

This function is available on systems that allow routing of e-mail received via SMTP.

The default setting is **Off**.

For details about SMTP RX File Delivery Settings, see "SMTP RX File Delivery Settings".

### 2 Sided Print

Specify whether or not received fax documents are to be printed on both sides of the paper.

The default setting is **Off**.

### Checkered Mark

Specify whether or not a checkered mark is to be printed on the first page of received fax documents.

The default setting is **On**.

### Center Mark

Specify whether or not a center mark is to be printed halfway down the left side and at the top center of each page received.

The default setting is **Off**.

### Print Reception Time

Specify whether or not the received date, time, and file number are printed at the bottom of received fax documents.

The default setting is **Off**.

### Reception File Print Quantity

Specify the number of copies to be printed for each fax document received.

- 1 to 10 set(s)

The default setting is **1 set(s)**.

### Paper Tray

Use this function to print fax documents received from programmed senders and fax documents from other senders, using different paper trays.

Display of tray names may differ depending on the options installed.

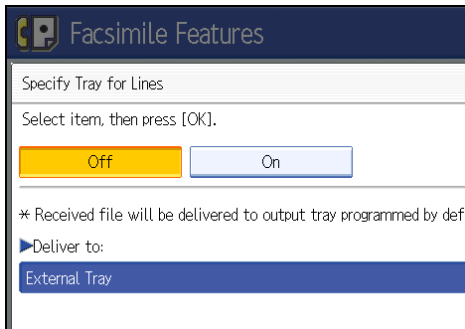
The default setting is **Auto Select**.

### Specify Tray for Lines

Specify a paper tray for each line (telephone, Internet Fax, IP-Fax).

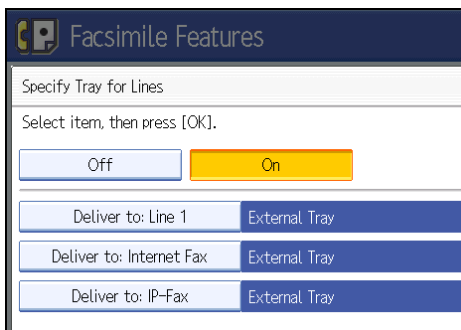
The default setting is **Off**.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Reception Settings].
3. Press [▼Next].
4. Press [Specify Tray for Lines].
5. Press [On].



If you select [Off], the received fax is delivered to a default tray.

6. Select the line type.



7. Select a tray to deliver the received paper onto, and then press [OK].

If you want to specify another line type, repeat from step 5.

8. Press the User [Tools/Counter] key.

### Folder Transfer Result Report

You can set whether the Folder Transfer Result Report is transmitted to the specified e-mail address, when folders are programmed as the forwarding destinations to which documents are sent from all senders or Special Senders.

You must first register the destination for the Folder Transfer Result Report in the destination list. See "Registering a Fax Destination".

Specify a group destination to transfer documents to multiple destinations. A maximum of 500 parties can be specified in a group. See "Registering Names to a Group".

Even if the Folder Transfer Result Report is not successfully transmitted, the report is not printed on this machine.

The default setting is **Do not E-mail**.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Reception Settings].
3. Press [▼Next].
4. Press [Folder Transfer Result Report].
5. To send the Folder Transfer Result Report, press [E-mail].
  - To not send the Folder Transfer Result Report, press [Do not E-mail], and then press [OK].
6. Press the Destination key of the e-mail address for notification, and then press [OK].
7. Check the selected destination, and then press [OK].
8. Press [Exit].
9. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### Memory Lock Reception

When you switch Memory Lock on, received documents are stored in memory and not printed automatically. When a document is received in the Memory Lock mode, the Confidential File indicator blinks. To print this document, enter the Memory Lock ID. A user without the ID cannot print the document.

This prevents unauthorized users from accessing the document. To use Memory Lock, program the Memory Lock ID, and then switch Memory Lock on. To store incoming documents from Special Senders only in Memory Lock, program each sender with "Special Senders to Treat Differently".

This function is not available with Internet Fax.

The default setting is **Off**.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Reception Settings].
3. Press [▼Next].

4. Press [Memory Lock Reception].
5. Select [On] or [Off], and then press [OK].
6. Press [Exit].
7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

**Reference**

- p.173 "Special Senders to Treat Differently"
- p.158 "Forwarding"
- p.147 "Reception File Setting"
- p.149 "SMTP Reception File Delivery Settings"
- p.242 "Registering a Fax Destination"
- p.278 "Registering Names to a Group"

# Initial Settings

This section describes the user tools in the Initial Settings menu under Facsimile Features.

## Parameter Setting

User Parameters allow you to customize various settings to suit your needs.

For details about Parameter Setting, see "Parameter Settings".

### Parameter Setting: Print List

You can print Parameter Setting list.

Print this list to see the current User Parameter settings. However, not all the parameter settings are printed.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Initial Settings].
3. Press [Parameter Setting: Print List].
4. Press the [Start] key.

To cancel printing a list before pressing the [Start] key, press [Cancel] or the [Clear/Stop] key.

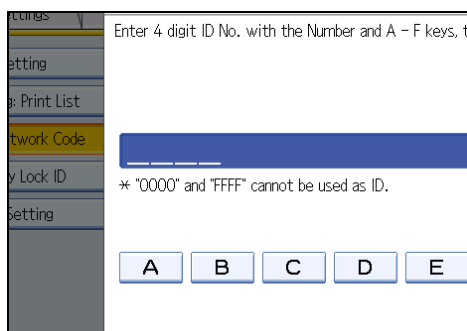
5. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### Program Closed Network Code

Register an ID required for Closed Network communication.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Initial Settings].
3. Press [Program Closed Network Code].
4. Enter an ID using the number keys and [A] to [F], and then press [OK].

Register a four-digit number using 0 to 9 and A to F (except for 0000 and FFFF).



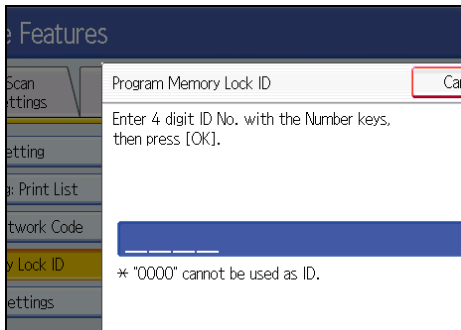
5. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### Program Memory Lock ID

Program a Memory Lock ID to be entered before printing documents when the Memory Lock function is activated.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Initial Settings].
3. Press [Program Memory Lock ID].
4. Enter an ID using the number keys, and then press [OK].

A Memory Lock ID can be any four-digit number, except 0000.



If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.

5. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### Internet Fax Settings

You can select to display the Internet Fax icon or not. When you want to send an Internet Fax, set On to display the icon.

The default setting is **Off**.

### Select Dial / Push Phone

Use this function to select a line type when the machine is connected to a G3 analog line.

Dial and Push lines are available for selection.

If the optional extra G3 interface unit is installed, settings for the extra G3 lines appear.

This function is not available in some regions.

The default setting is **Push Button Phone**.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Initial Settings].
3. Press [Select Dial / Push Phone].
4. Press [Push Button Phone] or [Dial Phone (10PPS)] to select the line, and then press [OK].
5. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



## Program Fax Information

Program information to be shown on the display of the other machine and printed as a report. The following information can be programmed.

- Fax Header
- Own Name
- Own Fax Number

For details about how to program Fax Information, see "Registering Fax Information".

### Enable H.323

Specify whether or not H.323 is used for IP-Fax transmission.

The default setting is **Off**.

### Enable SIP

Specify whether or not SIP is used for IP-Fax transmission.

The default setting is **Off**.

### H.323 Settings

Set the IPv4 address or host name, and alias telephone number of the gatekeeper.

If you select [On] using the User Parameters, you can use the gatekeeper server. See "Parameter Settings" (switch 34, bit 0).

You can use numbers, and symbols ("#" and "\*") for registration of the alias telephone number in H.323 Settings. Make sure you enter these characters correctly.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Initial Settings].
3. Press [H.323 Settings].
4. Press [Change] for each property.
5. Enter the IPv4 address or host name, and alias telephone number and press [OK].
6. Press [OK].
7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### SIP Settings

Set the SIP server's IPv4 address or host name, and SIP user name.

If you select [On] using the User Parameters, you can use the SIP server. See "Parameter Settings" (switch 34, bit 1).

You can use alphanumeric symbols (lower and upper cases) and symbols (";", "?", ":", "&", "=", "+", "\$", " ", "-", "\_", ".", "!", "~", "\*", "#", "(", ")", "%", "/", and "@") for registration of the SIP User Name in SIP Settings. Make sure you enter these characters correctly.

Use numbers and periods (".") to enter the correct IPv4 addresses for the gatekeeper, SIP server, and gateway. To obtain the correct IPv4 addresses, consult the administrator.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Initial Settings].
3. Press [SIP Settings].
4. Press [Change] for each property.

A proxy server relays call requests and responses.

A redirect server processes request destination inquiries.

A register server registers location information of user agents (which correspond to telephones or facsimiles on public telephone lines) on an IP network.

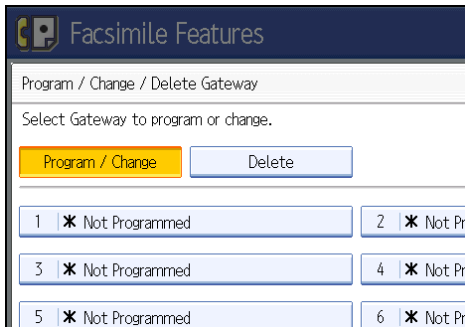
5. Enter the IPv4 address or host name, and SIP user name, and then press [OK].
6. Specify whether to perform SIP digest authentication.  
If you select [On], enter the password using up to 128 characters.
7. Press [OK].
8. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### Program / Change / Delete Gateway

Register, change, or delete the gateway used for transmission to IP-Fax.

- Program / Change
  1. Press [Facsimile Features].
  2. Press [Initial Settings].
  3. Press [Program / Change / Delete Gateway].
  4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
  5. Press a gateway to register.

When registering a new gateway, press [Not Programmed].

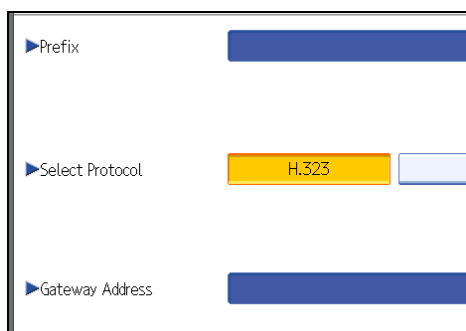


6. Press [Change] for "Prefix".
7. Enter the Prefix using the number keys, and then press [OK].  
To change the existing prefix, press [Clear], and then enter a new prefix.

For documents sent using a gateway to G3 Fax, prefixes can be used. If the first several digits of IP-Fax number and the gateway- specific prefix are identical, documents can be transmitted using the registered digits of the gateway. For example, if both 03 and 04 have been registered as gateway number while 03 12345678 is also specified, documents can be transmitted via a gateway for which 03 is used as a prefix.

When you wish to use the gateways regardless of the IP-Fax destination numbers, register only the gateway addresses without registering the prefix.

8. Select a protocol.



9. Press [Change] for "Gateway Address".
  10. Enter the gateway address, and then press [OK].
  11. Press [OK].
  12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- Delete
    1. Press [Facsimile Features].
    2. Press [Initial Settings].
    3. Press [Program / Change / Delete Gateway].
    4. Press [Delete], and then select a gateway to delete.
    5. Press [Yes] on the confirmation message.
 

If you do not want to delete the gateway you have selected, press [No].
    6. Press [Exit].
    7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### E-mail Setting

Set whether or not to use "E-mail" in the fax functions.

The default setting is **Off**.

### Folder Setting

Set whether or not to use "folder" in the fax functions.

The default setting is **Off**.

 **Reference**

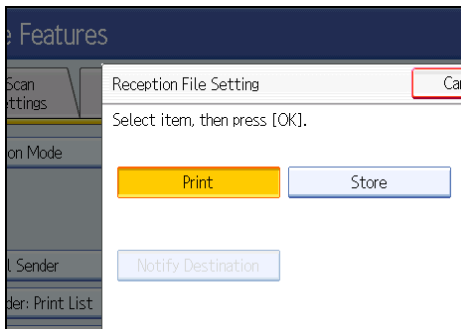
- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"
- p.163 "Parameter Settings"
- p.154 "Registering Fax Information"

# Reception File Setting

Specify whether received documents are to be saved on the hard disk or printed immediately without being saved. You can print stored documents repeatedly and download them as images to a computer using Web Image Monitor or DeskTopBinder. If you select printing without saving, documents are printed each time they are received.

## ★ Important

- The optional printer/scanner unit is required.
1. Press [Facsimile Features].
  2. Press [Reception Settings].
  3. Press [Reception File Setting].
  4. Press [Print] or [Store], and then press [OK].



To cancel your selection, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step 3.

When [Store] is selected, you can select whether or not to send notice of reception to a specific e-mail address. To notify of reception, press [Notify Destination] and select an e-mail address from the Internet Fax destinations programmed in the address book. Further, you can register a group destination. In such a case, a maximum of 500 destinations can be specified in a group.

5. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## ↓ Note

- You can use "Parameter Settings" (switch 10, bit 5) to select whether or not to print stored received documents. See "Parameter Settings".
- If [Store] is selected and a destination for notification is specified, notification of document reception can be sent to the specified e-mail address.
- Documents saved on the hard disk are categorized as received and stored documents.
- You cannot change to a different setting if received documents have been stored on the hard disk. To change to different setting, print documents stored on the hard disk if necessary, and then delete them.

- Received confidential documents are stored in memory. Use the Print Confidential RX File function to print them.
- With [Store] selected, more memory space is used as the number of saved documents increases. After memory space becomes insufficient, no more documents are saved on the hard disk. When this happens, the machine starts printing then overwriting old documents.
- You can store received documents up to a total of approximately 320 pages or 2,240 pages of A4 size Standard <ITU-T#1 Chart>.
- You cannot send received documents.
- You cannot manage stored documents from the Document Server display.
- It is recommended that you use Web Image Monitor running under the same network environment as this machine. Otherwise, the Web browser may not open and an error may occur.

**Reference**

- p.163 "Parameter Settings"

---

## Reception Report e-mail

---

When a received document is stored, this report is sent to the e-mail address set as the destination for notification.

**Note**

- Depending on your e-mail application, a phishing warning might appear after you receive a "Reception Report e-mail". To prevent phishing warnings appearing after you receive a "Reception Report e-mail", you must add the sender to your e-mail application's exclusion list. For details about how to do this, see your e-mail application's Help.

# SMTP Reception File Delivery Settings

This section describes the SMTP Reception File Delivery Settings menu under Facsimile Features.

When an authorized e-mail address is set, e-mail received from addresses that do not match the authorized address is discarded, and an error message is returned to the SMTP server.

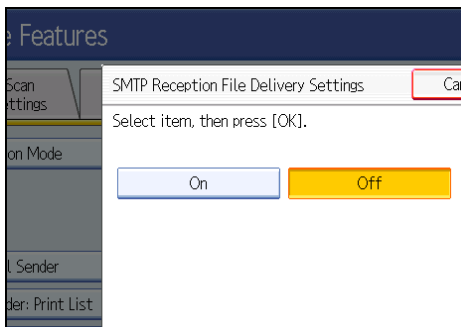
The authorized e-mail address is compared with the addresses of e-mail originators, as illustrated by the following examples.

- When the authorized e-mail address is set to "@aaa.abcd.com":  
 abc@aaa.abcd.com - accepted  
 def@aaa.xyz.com - not accepted  
 abc@abcd.com - not accepted

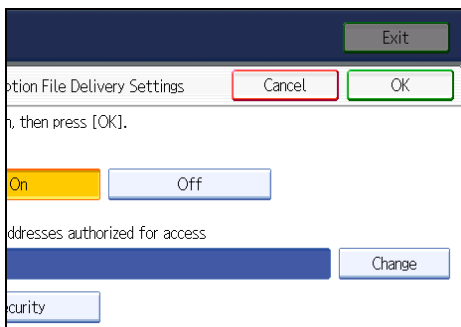
No Error Report is output even when e-mail is discarded.

This function is available on systems that allow routing of e-mail received via SMTP.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Reception Settings].
3. Press [SMTP RX File Delivery Settings].
4. Press [On].



5. Press [Change].



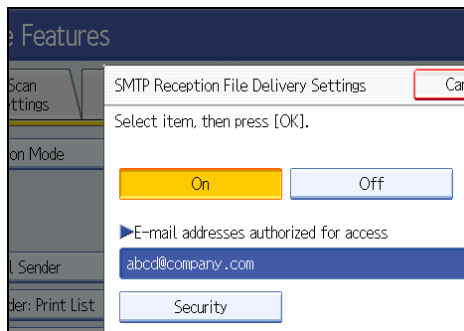
**6. Enter the sending e-mail address to be authorized.**

If you make a mistake, press [Backspace] or [All Delete], and then enter again.

**7. Press [OK].****8. Press [Security].**

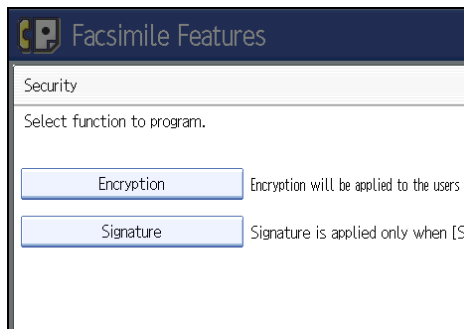
If not specifying the security function, proceed to step 11.

Security is set to use S/MIME authentication. For details about the security settings, consult your administrator.

**9. Select the security functions.**

To specify encryption for documents for delivery, press [Encryption]. To use the encryption function, the address must be stored in the Address Book and have the encryption option enabled. For details about Encryption, consult your administrator.

To attach a signature to documents for delivery, press [Signature]. For details about Signature, consult your administrator.

**10. Press [OK].****11. Press [Exit].****12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.****Note**

- If you have specified e-mail destination for delivery, you can specify the file format used for delivery. See "Parameter Settings" (switch 21, bit 3).



- Select [Encrypt All] in the encryption settings and encrypted e-mail is sent regardless of the encryption settings in [Security]. For details about encryption, consult your administrator.
- The electronic signature is limited in the following ways, depending on the S/MIME settings on Web Image Monitor. For details about the electronic signature, consult your administrator.
  - If [Set Individually] is set:  
You can set [Signature] in [Security] and attach an electronic signature to email for every transmission.
  - If [Do not Use Signatures] is set:  
Even if you press [Security], [Signature] does not appear.
  - If [Use Signatures] is set:  
An electronic signature is attached when you send email. The [Signature] setting in [Security] cannot be cancelled.

#### Reference

- p.163 "Parameter Settings"

## Program / Change / Delete Scan Size

This section describes how to program, change, and delete a Scan Size.

### ★ Important

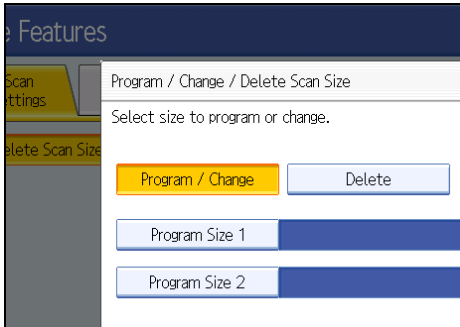
- When programming or changing a scan size, it is recommended that you make a record of the new size.

When you select a scan size to scan a custom size original, two custom sizes are available (Program Size 1 and Program Size 2). Use these functions to program a custom size in advance. The procedure is the same for programming and changing.

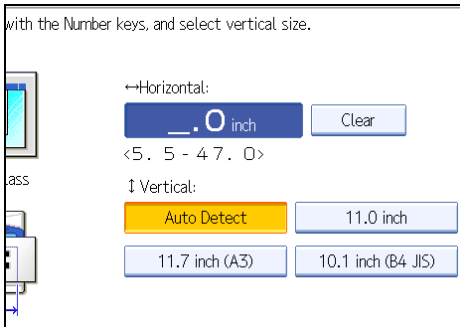
You can program up to two sizes.

Specify a horizontal length from 128 to 1200 mm, or from 5.5 to 47.0 inches.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Scan Settings].
3. Press [Program / Change / Delete Scan Size].
4. Select [Program Size 1] or [Program Size 2].



5. Enter a horizontal size using the number keys.



Each time you press [mm] or [inch], the units switch between "mm" and "inch".

If you enter a length and press [mm] or [inch], the length is converted automatically according to the unit (fractions are rounded off). For example, when you enter [2], [2], and [0] in millimeters and

change to "inch", the length 8.7 "inch" is shown on the display. If you press [mm] or [inch] again, "221 mm" is displayed.

If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again.

To cancel a scan size, press [Cancel].

**6. Select a vertical size, and then press [OK].**

The displayed vertical size differs depending on the selected unit. When [mm] is selected, [Auto Detect], [210 mm (A4)], [257 mm (B4 JIS)], [297 mm (A3)], [216 mm (8 1/2)], and [279 mm (11)] are shown. When [inch] is selected, [Auto Detect], [8.3 inch (A4)], [10.1 inch (B4 JIS)], [11.7 inch (A3)], [8.5 inch], and [11.0 inch] are shown.

To cancel a scan size, press [Cancel].

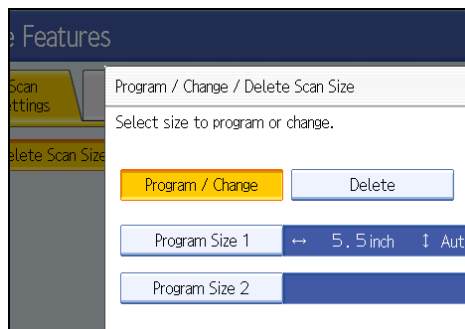
**7. Press [Exit].**

**8. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

## Deleting a Scan Size

This section describes how to delete the programmed Scan Size.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Scan Settings].
3. Press [Program / Change / Delete Scan Size].
4. Press [Delete], and then select [Program Size 1] or [Program Size 2].



**5. Press [Delete].**

To cancel deleting, press [Do not Delete]. The display returns to that of step 4.

**6. Press [Exit].**

**7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

# Registering Fax Information

This section describes Fax Information.

You can send information to the other party when transmitting or receiving a fax document. This information is shown on the display of the other machine and printed as a report. The following information can be sent.

## ★ Important

- You can confirm programmed settings from the User Parameter List. It is recommended that you print and keep the User Parameter List when you program or change settings. See "Parameter Settings".
- In the USA, the Fax Header must contain the telephone number of the line your machine is connected to. It will be printed on the header of every page you send. Required in the USA.
- In the USA, law requires that your fax number be included in the Fax header. Register the fax number and switch on Fax Header Print with User Parameters (switch 18, bit 1) in the Fax Features menu.

## Fax Header

The Fax Header is printed as the header of every fax you send. You should include your name in the Fax Header.

You can program Fax Header1 or Fax Header2. When you send originals using the destination list, you can select which Fax Header is printed on the document received by the other party.

You can register "Fax Header" using up to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbols.

You can use characters, symbols, numbers, and spaces.

You can set whether or not to print a Fax Header using [Fax Header Print] under "Options". See "Fax Header Print", Facsimile Reference.

## Own Name

The Own Name is sent to the other party when you send or receive a fax. This name should include your name. The Own Name is shown on the display of the other machine and printed in a report.

Own Name can be used only if the other machine is of the same manufacturer and has the Own Name function.

You can register "Own Name" using up to 20 alphanumeric characters and symbols.

## Own Fax Number

The sender's Own Fax Number is sent to the other party when sending a fax.

The received facsimile number is shown on the display of the other machine and printed in a report.

This function is available regardless of the manufacturer of the other party's machine.

You can register "Own Fax Number" using up to 20 numbers, space, and "+" symbol.

## ↓ Note

- For details about how to print Fax Header, see "Fax Header Print", Facsimile Reference.

## Reference

- p.163 "Parameter Settings"

## Registering Fax Information

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Initial Settings].
3. Press [Program Fax Information].
4. Select the Fax Information you want to register.

Select item to program.

Fax Header   Own Name   Own Fax Number

First Name

Second Name

5. Register the name and facsimile number.
6. Press [Exit].
7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## Registering a Fax Header

1. Check that [Fax Header] is selected.
2. Press [First Name] or [Second Name].

Select item to program.

Fax Header   Own Name   Own Fax Number

First Name

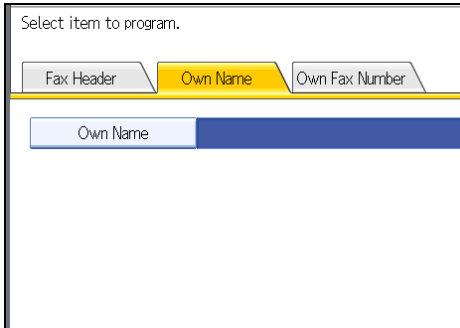
Second Name

3. Enter a fax header including your Own Name and Fax Number, and then press [OK].

## Registering an Own Name

---

1. Press [Own Name].
2. Press [Own Name].



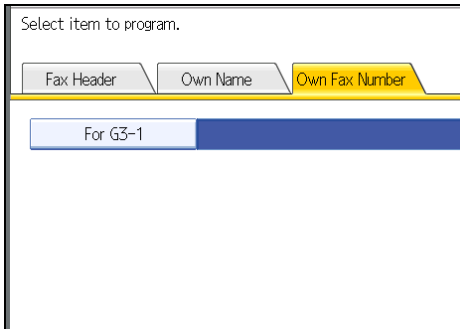
4

3. Enter your own name, and then press [OK].

## Registering an Own Fax Number

---

1. Press [Own Fax Number].
2. Select line type to program.



The display differs depending on the optional units installed on the machine.

3. Enter your own facsimile's number using the number keys, and then press [OK].  
To enter a + sign or a space, press [+ ] or [Space].

---

## Changing Fax Information

---

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Initial Settings].
3. Press [Program Fax Information].

**4. Select the Fax Information you want to change.**

To change a Fax Header, see "Registering a Fax Header".

To change Own Name, see "Registering an Own Name".

To change Own Fax Number, "Registering an Own Fax Number".

**5. Press [Exit].****6. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.****Reference**

- p.155 "Registering a Fax Header"
- p.156 "Registering an Own Name"
- p.156 "Registering an Own Fax Number"

---

**Deleting Fax Information**

---

**1. Press [Facsimile Features].****2. Press [Initial Settings].****3. Press [Program Fax Information].****4. Press [Fax Header], [Own Name], or [Own Fax Number] to delete.****5. Press the item you want to delete.****6. Press [Backspace] or [Delete All], and then press [OK].**

When deleting your own facsimile's number, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then press [OK].

**7. Press [Exit].****8. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

# Forwarding

Print documents received and forward to a specified End Receiver. This is useful if, for example, you are visiting another office and would like a copy of your documents to be sent to that office. You can also specify a "e-mail" and "folder" as the forwarding destination.

## ★ Important

- You can select end receivers only from among destinations programmed in the Address Book.

A fax number, Internet Fax destination, IP-Fax destination, e-mail address, and folder destination can be set as the forwarding destination.

4

When you wish to change the end receivers depending on the senders, specify the end receivers by the senders, at "Program Special Sender". Documents not received from specified senders are sent to the destination specified in this function. For details about how to program Special Sender, see "Special Senders to Treat Differently".

You can specify whether or not to print forwarded documents. See "Parameter Settings" (switch 11, bit 6).

Deleting a destination specified as a forward destination from the destination list causes the settings of the forward destination to be deleted, so they must be registered again. When a destination is changed, a document is transmitted to the new destination. If there is no destination of the specified type, you can set which destination to be used as an alternative destination. See "Parameter Settings" (switch 32, bit 0).

You can program one of the Quick Operation keys with operations for this function. See "General Settings".

If you have specified e-mail destination or folder destination for forwarding, you can specify the file format used for forwarding. See "Parameter Settings" (switch 21, bit 3).

## 📖 Reference

- p.129 "General Settings"
- p.173 "Special Senders to Treat Differently"
- p.163 "Parameter Settings"

## Programming an End Receiver

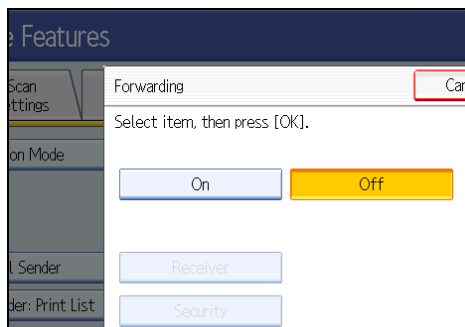
### ★ Important

- One end receiver can be registered for each special sender. To register two or more end receivers, use group destination. However, a maximum of 500 destinations can be specified in a group.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Reception Settings].
3. Press [Forwarding].



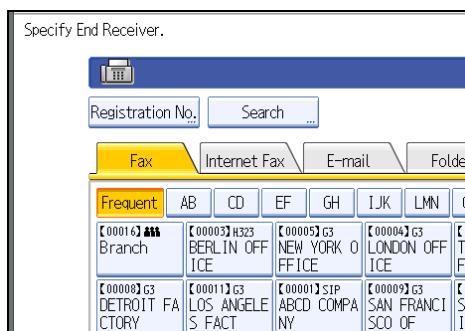
#### 4. Press [On].



If there is an End Receiver already programmed, a receiver name is shown. If you want to change the receiver, press [Receiver] and proceed to step 5.

To cancel Forwarding, press [Off] and proceed to step 9.

#### 5. Specify an End Receiver using the destination list, and then press [OK].



Press the key on the left of the display to switch the destination between fax number, e-mail address, Internet Fax destination, and folder destination.

IP-Fax destination appears in the fax destination list.

Set a folder destination in Address Book Management under Administrator Tools in the System Settings menu. See "Registering Folders".

Set a e-mail destination in Address Book Management under Administrator Tools in the System Settings menu. See "E-mail Destination".

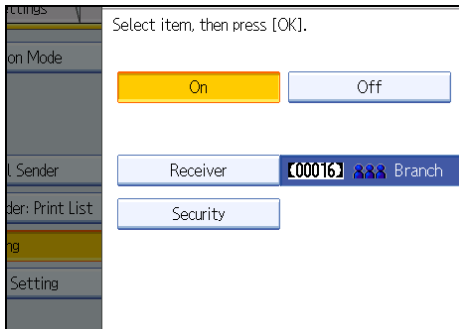
If you have specified e-mail destination or folder destination for forwarding, you can specify the file format used for forwarding. See "Parameter Settings" (switch 21, bit 3).

If you make a mistake, press [Clear] before pressing [OK], and then try again.

#### 6. Press [Security].

If not specifying the security function, proceed to step 9.

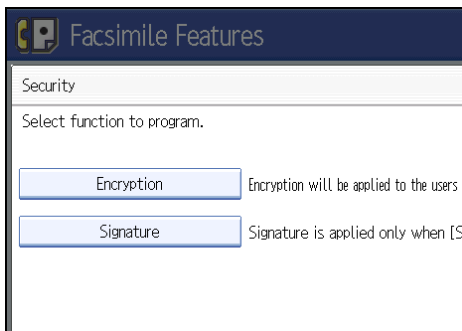
Security is set to use S/MIME authentication. For details about the security settings, consult your administrator.



### 7. Select the security functions.

To specify encryption for documents for Forwarding, press [Encryption]. To use the encryption function, the address must be stored in the Address Book and have the encryption option enabled. For details about Encryption, consult your administrator.

To attach a signature to documents for Forwarding, press [Signature]. For details about Signature, consult your administrator.



### 8. Press [OK].

### 9. Press [Exit].

### 10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### ↓ Note

- Select [Encrypt All] in the encryption settings and encrypted e-mail is sent regardless of the encryption settings in [Security]. For details about encryption, consult your administrator.
- The electronic signature is limited in the following ways, depending on the S/MIME settings on Web Image Monitor. For details about the electronic signature, consult your administrator.
  - If [Set Individually] is set:  
You can set [Signature] in [Security] and attach an electronic signature to email for every transmission.
  - If [Do not Use Signatures] is set:  
Even if you press [Security], [Signature] does not appear.
  - If [Use Signatures] is set:

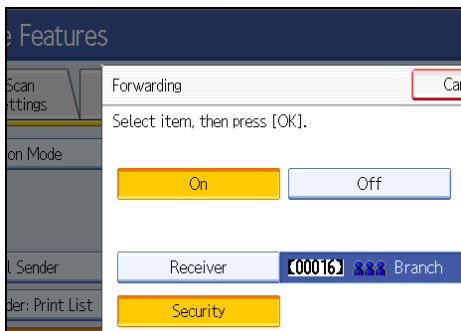
An electronic signature is attached when you send email. The [Signature] setting in [Security] cannot be cancelled.

### Reference

- p.163 "Parameter Settings"
- p.260 "Registering Folders"

## Quitting the Forwarding Function

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Reception Settings].
3. Press [Forwarding].
4. Press [Off], and then press [OK].



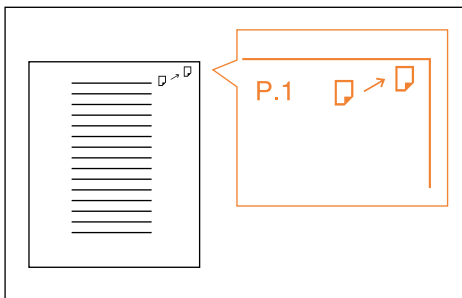
5. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## Forwarding Mark

This section describes Forwarding Mark.

You can print a Forwarding Mark on receiver's documents that have been forwarded.

The receiver can distinguish between forwarded and normally received documents.



BBM015S

This function is not available when memory forwarding is performed to an e-mail destination or folder destination.

You can specify whether or not to print a Forwarding Mark in the User Parameters. See "Parameter Settings".

 **Reference**

- p.163 "Parameter Settings"

# Parameter Settings

User Parameters allow you to customize various settings to suit your needs. To change function settings, set the User Parameter Switches.

## Switches and Bits

Each User Parameter has a set of switches, and each of the switches consist of eight bits, whose values are "0" or "1". The right most bit is bit 0 and the left most is bit 7. You can adjust the settings to match your needs by switching the value of bits between "0" and "1".

- Switch 02

0	0	1	1	1	0	1	1
↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0

4

## User Parameter List

User Parameter Switches are outlined in the following table.

### Switch: 02, Bit: 0

Forwarding Mark

- 0: Off
- 1: On

### Switch: 02, Bit: 3

TSI Print

- 0: Off
- 1: On

### Switch: 03, Bit: 0

Automatic printing of the communication Result Report

- 0: Off
- 1: On

### Switch: 03, Bit: 2

Automatic printing of the Memory Storage Report

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 03, Bit: 3**

Whether or not to print the SEP Code RX Reserve Report automatically

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 03, Bit: 4**

Whether or not to print the SEP Code RX Result Report automatically

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 03, Bit: 5**

Automatic printing of the immediate TX Result Report

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 03, Bit: 7**

Automatic printing of the journal

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 04, Bit: 0**

Automatic printing of the Confidential File Report

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 04, Bit: 1**

Automatic printing of Communication Failure Report and Transfer Result Report

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 04, Bit: 4**

Indicates the parties

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 04, Bit: 5**

Include sender's name on reports

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 04, Bit: 7**

Include a portion of the image on reports

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 05, Bit: 0**

Receive Service Call (SC) Condition (Substitute Reception during service call)

- 0: Possible (Substitute RX)
- 1: Not possible (Reception off)

**Switch: 05, Bit: 2, 1**

Substitute the reception when the machine cannot print (because paper is jammed, all paper trays have run out of paper, toner is empty, or all paper trays are out of order)

- 00: Enabled Unconditionally (Free)
- 01: Enabled when Own Name/Own Fax Number is received
- 10: Enabled for Closed Network Code match
- 11: Disabled (Reception off)

**Switch: 05, Bit: 5**

Print sheet is limited to that which has highest priority

- 0 : Off
- 1 : On

**Switch : 05, Bit: 7**

Empty tray alert (Paper Empty Warning) even when one paper tray is empty

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 07, Bit: 2**

Parallel Memory Transmission

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 08, Bit: 2**

Authorized Reception Type

- 0: Receive from specified senders only
- 1: Receive all documents except from specified senders

**Switch: 10, Bit: 3**

Page reduction when printing

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 10, Bit: 5**

Reception file setting

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 10, Bit: 6**

Use both e-mail notification and printed reports to confirm the transmission result

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 11, Bit: 6**

Local print when forwarding

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 14, Bit: 0**

Print documents received with Auto Power-On Reception (Night Printing mode)

- 0: Immediate Printing (On)
- 1: When turning on the operation switch (Off)

**Switch: 14, Bit: 3**

Reset when function changed

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 15, Bit: 0, 1, 2**

Selecting the available paper feed tray

- 001: Tray 1
- 010: Tray 2
- 011: Tray 3
- 100: Tray 4
- 101: Large Capacity Tray (LCT)

**Switch: 15, Bit: 5**

Whether or not to select the available paper feed tray

- 0: Off
- 1: On



**Switch: 17, Bit: 2**

Whether you need to press [Add Destination] after specifying a destination with the Destination key when broadcasting

- 0: Not necessary
- 1: Necessary

**Switch : 17, Bit 3**

Whether or not to reset the settings when original is scanned

- 0: On
- 1: Off

**Switch: 17, Bit: 7**

Receive documents by pressing the [Start] key when originals are not set

- 0: Off (no documents Received after pressing the [Start] key)
- 1: On (documents received after Pressing the [Start] key)

**Switch: 18, Bit: 0**

Print date with Fax Header

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 18, Bit: 1**

Print transmitter origin with Fax Header

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 18, Bit: 2**

Print file number with Fax Header

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 18, Bit: 3**

Print page number with Fax Header

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 19, Bit: 0**

Use paper delivery shift function (Offset Print)

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 19, Bit: 1**

Sort Journal by line type

- 0: Off
- 0: On

**Switch: 20, Bit: 0**

Automatic printing of the LAN-Fax Result Report

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 20, Bit: 5, 4, 3, 2**

Reprinting time of stored documents in memory that could not be printed using LAN-Fax Driver

- 0000: 0 minutes
- 0001: 1 minutes
- 0010: 2 minutes
- 0011: 3 minutes
- 0100: 4 minutes
- 0101: 5 minutes
- 0110: 6 minutes
- 0111: 7 minutes
- 1000: 8 minutes
- 1001: 9 minutes
- 1010: 10 minutes
- 1011: 11 minutes
- 1100: 12 minutes
- 1101: 13 minutes
- 1110: 14 minutes
- 1111: 15 minutes

**Switch: 21, Bit: 0**

Print results of sending Reception Notice Request message

- 0: Off (print only when an error occurs)
- 1: On

**Switch: 21, Bit: 1**

Respond to e-mail reception acknowledgment request

- 0: Off

- 1: On

**Switch: 21, Bit: 2**

Choose whether to print JPEG or PDF files attached to incoming e-mail

- 0: Do not print
- 1: Print

**Switch: 21, Bit: 3**

File format for files forwarded to folder destinations

- 0: TIFF
- 1: PDF

**Switch: 21, Bit: 4**

Transmit Journal by E-mail

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 21, Bit: 6**

Display Network error

- 0: Display (On)
- 1: Not display (Off)

**Switch: 21, Bit: 7**

Transmit Error Mail Notification

- 0: On
- 1: Off

**Switch: 22, Bit: 0**

Detect a dial tone before sending faxes when using the telephone line (LINE)

- 0: Not detect (Off)
- 1: Detect (On)

**Switch: 22, Bit: 1**

Detect a dial tone before sending faxes when using the telephone line (LINE2)

- 0: Not detect (Off)
- 1: Detect (On)

**Switch: 22, Bit: 2**

Detect a dial tone before sending faxes when using the telephone line (LINE3)

- 0: Not detect (Off)
- 1: Detect (On)

**Switch: 24, Bit: 0**

Store documents that could not be transmitted in memory

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 24, Bit: 1**

Length of time documents that could not be transmitted are stored in memory

- 0: 24 hours
- 1: 72 hours

**Switch: 24, Bit: 2**

Whether to retain the stored file permanently

- 0: No
- 1: Yes

**Switch: 32, Bit: 0**

Select which order of priority to be used to select an alternative

- 0: Paper Output Priority  
<Priority Order>
  1. IP-Fax destination
  2. Fax number
  3. Internet Fax
  4. E-mail address
  5. Folder
- 1: Electronic Output Priority  
<Priority Order>
  1. Internet Fax
  2. E-mail address
  3. Folder
  4. IP-Fax destination
  5. Fax number

**Switch: 34, Bit: 0**

Use gatekeeper with IP-Fax

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 34, Bit: 1**

Use SIP server with IP-Fax

- 0: Off
- 1: On

**Switch: 35, Bit: 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, 0**

Redial interval when sending a backup file

- 00000000: 0 minute(s) ~ 11111111: 255 minute(s)

**Switch: 36, Bit: 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, 0**

Maximum number of redials when sending a backup file

- 00000000/00000001: 1 time(s) ~ 11111110/11111111: 254 time(s)

**Switch: 37, Bit: 0**

Whether to stop sending a backup file if the destination folder becomes full while the machine is sending or waiting to send a fax or the backup file

- 0: No
- 1: Yes

**Switch: 37, Bit: 3, 2**

Whether to print the backup file if it cannot be sent

- 00: Do not print
- 01: Print first page only
- 10: Print whole file

---

## Changing the User Parameters

---

This section describes how to set parameters.

 **Important**

- Access to some User Parameter Settings may require options, or other settings may need to be made beforehand.
- It is recommended that you print and keep a User Parameter list when you program or change a User Parameter.
- Do not change any bit switches other than those shown on the previous pages.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Initial Settings].
3. Press [Parameter Setting].
4. Select the switch number you want to change.

**5. Select the bit number you want to change.**

When the bit number is pressed, the current value switches between 1 and 0.

Repeat from step 5 to change another bit number for the same switch.

**6. Press [OK].**

To cancel these settings, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step 4.

**7. Repeat step 4 through step 5 to change the switch settings.**

**8. After all the settings are finished, press [Exit].**

**9. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

# Special Senders to Treat Differently

This section describes Special Senders settings.

By programming particular senders in advance, you can set the following function for each sender:

- Authorized Reception
- Forwarding
- Reception File Print Qty
- Print 2 Sided
- Memory Lock
- Paper Tray

Use Own Name or Own Fax Number to program your senders. If the sender has a machine of the same manufacturer, program an Own Name that has already been programmed as a sender. If the machine is not from the same manufacturer, Own Fax Number is used.

You can apply the same settings to all programmed numbers. You can then customize the settings for individual numbers as necessary using the Special Sender Registration function.

The following items can be programmed.

- Special Senders

Up to 30 Special Senders can be registered. A maximum of 24 characters can be used for each name when using G3.

- Full/Partial agreement

When you program own names and facsimile names for multiple destinations, you can program a common sequence of characters to identify destinations.

Destination to be programmed (Own Name)	Number of programmed identifications
NEW YORK BRANCH HONG KONG BRANCH SYDNEY BRANCH	3

Using Partial matching

Destination to be programmed (Own Name)	Number of programmed identifications
BRANCH	1

You can program up to 30 wild cards.

Spaces are ignored when identifications are compared.

You can use wild cards for the following functions:

- Forwarding
- Special Reception Function
- Authorized Reception

When using Partial agreement, you can enter up to the first 24 characters of an e-mail address to use it as an own name or facsimile name.

**Note**

- You cannot program senders as Special Senders if they do not have Own Name or Own Fax Number programmed.
- The machine cannot differentiate between SEP Code RX documents from Special Senders.
- You cannot use the following functions with Internet Fax receptions.
  - Authorized Reception per Sender
  - Reception File Print Qty per Sender
  - Memory Lock per Sender
- You can program up to 24 characters for the sender.
- To use Forwarding, Print 2 Sided, or Paper Tray with Internet Fax reception, program the sender's e-mail address.
- You can check Own Name and Own Fax Number using the Journal. You can check programmed Special Senders using the specified sender list.

**Reference**

- p.163 "Parameter Settings"

---

## Authorized Reception

---

Use this function to limit incoming senders.

The machine only receives faxes from programmed Special Senders, and therefore, it helps you screen out unwanted documents, such as junk mail, and prevents wasting fax paper.

**Note**

- Without programming Special Senders, the Authorized Reception function will not work, even if you select "On".
- You can change Special Senders in the same way as you program them.

---

## Reception File Print Quantity

---

Print the specified number of copies of documents received from programmed senders (Special Senders).



If you do not program any Special Senders, the machine prints the specified number of copies for all received documents.

#### ↓ Note

- You cannot use multi-copy printing with Memory Lock.
- You can specify up to 10 copies.

---

## Forwarding

---

Print received documents, and then transfer them to those receivers programmed beforehand.

It is also possible to forward faxes sent only by senders programmed as Special Senders.

#### ↓ Note

- If you select [Same as Basic Settings], the fax document is forwarded to the receivers programmed in "Forwarding" under Facsimile Features.
- If you do not program any Special Senders, the machine transfers all incoming documents to the other end receivers specified in "Forwarding" under Facsimile Features.
- You can set the fax destination, Internet Fax destination, IP-Fax destination, e-mail destination, or folder destination, as a forward destination.
- If you have specified e-mail destination or folder destination for forwarding, you can specify the file format used for forwarding. See "Parameter Settings" (switch: 21, bit: 3).

#### 📖 Reference

- p.179 "Forwarding per Sender"
- p.163 "Parameter Settings"

---

## Print 2 Sided

---

Print on both sides of the paper.

#### ↓ Note

- If you select the bypass tray for "Paper Tray", duplex printing is disabled.

---

## Memory Lock

---

Store incoming documents from programmed senders (Special Senders) in memory without printing them. People without the Memory Lock ID cannot print the documents, and therefore this function is useful for receiving confidential documents. If you do not program any senders, the machine receives fax document from all senders using Memory Lock reception.

**★ Important**

- You must register Memory Lock ID in advance. For details about how to register Memory Lock ID, see "Initial Settings".
- If you program the same sender in Memory Lock and Forwarding, Forwarding is disabled.

**📖 Reference**

- p.141 "Initial Settings"

---

## Paper Tray

---

4

Print documents received from programmed senders (Special Senders) and the documents from other senders on different types of paper.

For example, if blue paper is in Tray 1 and white paper is in Tray 2, the machine prints the documents from Special Senders on the blue paper and prints the documents from other senders on the white paper, making it easy for you to separate the two.

If you do not program any Special Senders, the machine outputs documents received from all senders using the default paper tray.

**↓ Note**

- If the machine receives a document that has a different size from the paper in the specified tray, the machine prints it after splitting it or minimizing its size.
- Selection of the bypass tray enables you to specify the paper size in "Scan Area".

---

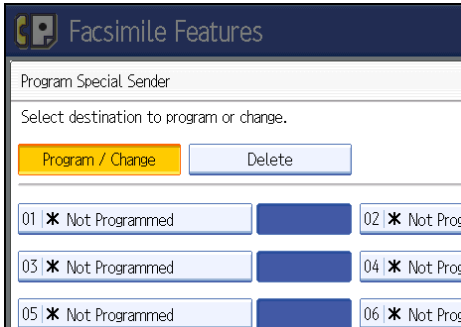
## Programming/Changing Special Senders

---

This section describes how to program and change Special Senders.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Reception Settings].
3. Press [Program Special Sender].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Select the sender to program or change.

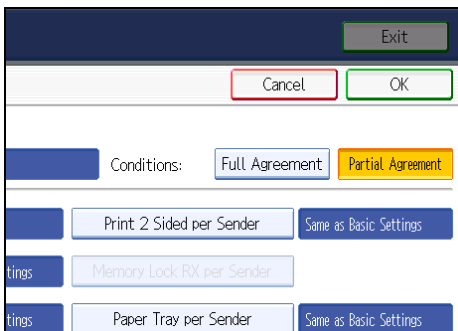
To program new sender, press [\*Not Programmed].



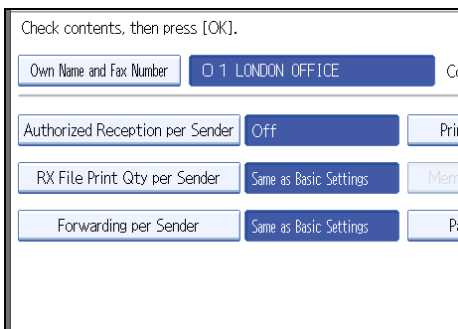
**6. Enter a sender name, and then press [OK].**

Enter a destination name using Own Name or Own Fax Number.

**7. Press [Full Agreement] or [Partial Agreement].**



**8. Select the item you want to program.**



You must select only the item you want to program.

To cancel these settings, press [Cancel]. The display returns to that of step 5.

**9. Press [OK].**

A Special Sender is programmed.

To program another sender, repeat the procedure from step 5.

**10. Press [Exit].**

**11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

**Note**

- To specify Authorized Reception, see "Authorized Reception per Sender".
- To specify Reception File Print Qty, see "Reception File Print Qty per Sender".
- To specify Forwarding, see "Forwarding per Sender".
- To specify print 2 sided, see "Print 2 Sided per Sender".
- To specify Memory Lock, see "Memory Lock per Sender".
- To specify paper tray, see "Paper Tray per Sender".

**Reference**

- p.178 "Authorized Reception per Sender"
- p.178 "Reception File Print Qty per Sender"
- p.179 "Forwarding per Sender"
- p.181 "Print 2 Sided per Sender"
- p.182 "Memory Lock per Sender"
- p.182 "Paper Tray per Sender"

---

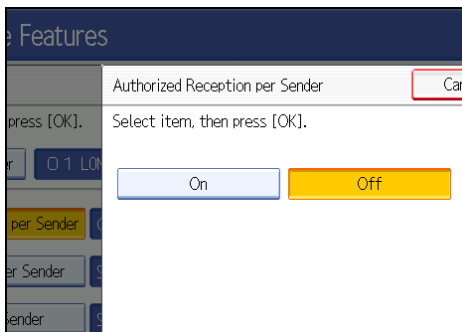
## Authorized Reception per Sender

---

This section describes how to specify Authorized Reception.

Specify when programming a Special Sender.

1. Press [Authorized Reception per Sender].
2. Press [On] or [Off], and then press [OK].



---

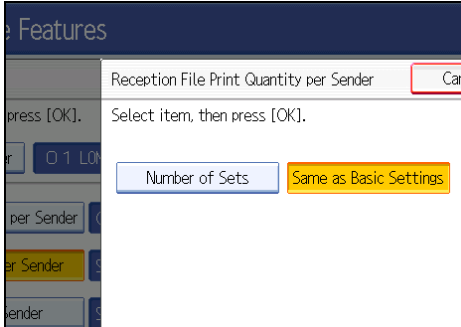
## Reception File Print Qty per Sender

---

This section describes how to specify Reception File Print Qty.

Specify when programming a Special Sender.

1. Press [RX File Print Qty per Sender].
2. Press [Number of Sets].



3. Enter the print quantity using the number keys, and then press [OK].

#### Note

- Selecting [Same as Basic Settings] will result in the same setting made for "RX File Print Qty" of "Reception Settings".
- If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.

## Forwarding per Sender

This section describes how to specify Forwarding.

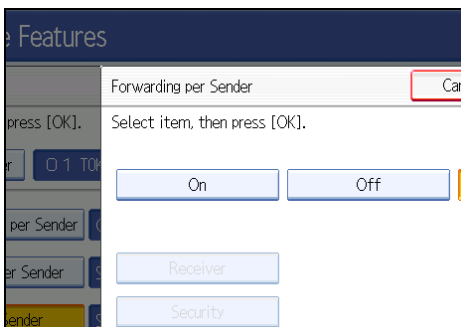
Specify when programming a Special Sender.

#### ★ Important

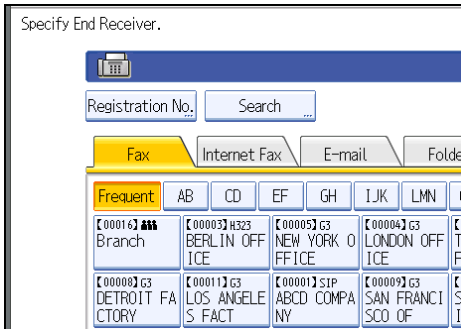
- One forward destination can be registered for each Special Sender. To register two or more forward destinations, use group destinations. However a maximum of 500 destinations can be specified in a group.

1. Press [Forwarding per Sender].
2. Select [On] or [Off].

If you select [Off], proceed to step 7.



**3. Specify an End Receiver using the destination list, and then press [OK].**



4

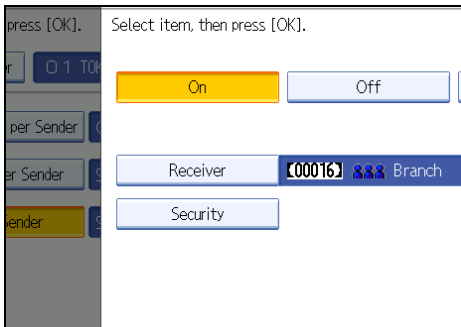
Press the key on the left of the display to switch the destination between fax number, Internet Fax destination, e-mail address, and folder destination.

IP-Fax destination appears in the fax destination list.

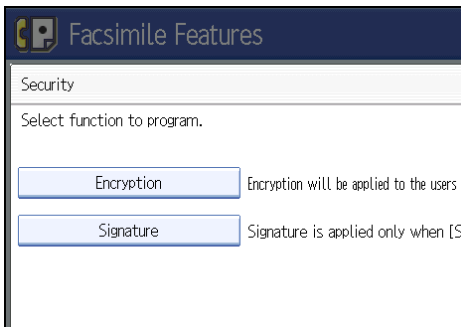
**4. Press [Security].**

If not specifying the security function, proceed to step 7.

Security is set to use S/MIME authentication. For details about the security settings, consult your administrator.



**5. Select the security functions.**



To specify encryption for documents for Forwarding, press [Encryption]. To use the encryption function, the address must be stored in the Address Book and have the encryption option enabled. For details about Encryption, consult your administrator.

To attach a signature to documents for Forwarding, press [Signature]. For details about Signature, consult your administrator.

6. Press [OK].

7. Press [OK].

#### ↓ Note

- Selecting [Same as Basic Settings] will result in the same setting made for "Forwarding" under "Reception Settings".
- If you have specified e-mail destination or folder destination for forwarding, you can specify the file format used for forwarding. See "Parameter Settings" (switch 21, bit 3).
- Deleting a destination specified as a forward destination from the destination list causes the settings of the forward destination to be deleted, so they must be registered again. When a destination is changed, a document is transmitted to the new destination. If there is no destination of the specified type, you can set which destination to be used as an alternative destination. See "Parameter Settings" (switch 32, bit 0).
- After you perform step 7, set "Forwarding" of "Reception Settings" to "On".
- Select [Encrypt All] in the encryption settings and encrypted e-mail is sent regardless of the encryption settings in [Security]. For details about encryption, consult your administrator.
- The electronic signature is limited in the following ways, depending on the S/MIME settings on Web Image Monitor. For details about the electronic signature, consult your administrator.
  - If [Set Individually] is set:  
You can set [Signature] in [Security] and attach an electronic signature to email for every transmission.
  - If [Do not Use Signatures] is set:  
Even if you press [Security], [Signature] does not appear.
  - If [Use Signatures] is set:  
An electronic signature is attached when you send email. The [Signature] setting in [Security] cannot be cancelled.

#### 📖 Reference

- p.163 "Parameter Settings"

---

## Print 2 Sided per Sender

---

This section describes how to specify Print 2 Sided.

Specify when programming a Special Sender.

1. Press **[Print 2 Sided per Sender]**.
2. Press **[On]** or **[Off]**, and then press **[OK]**.

**Note**

- Selecting [Same as Basic Settings] will result in the same setting made for "2 Sided Print" of "Reception Settings".

---

## Memory Lock per Sender

---

4

This section describes how to specify Memory Lock.

Specify when programming a Special Sender.

1. Press **[Memory Lock RX per Sender]**.
2. Press **[On]** or **[Off]**, and then press **[OK]**.

**Note**

- Selecting [Same as Basic Settings] will result in the same setting made for "Program Memory Lock ID" under "Initial Settings".

---

## Paper Tray per Sender

---

This section describes how to specify Paper Tray.

Specify when programming a Special Sender.

1. Press **[Paper Tray per Sender]**.
2. Select the tray you want to use, and then press **[OK]**.

**Note**

- Selecting [Same as Basic Settings] will result in the same setting made for "Paper Tray" of "Reception Settings".

---

## Programming Initial Set Up of a Special Sender

---

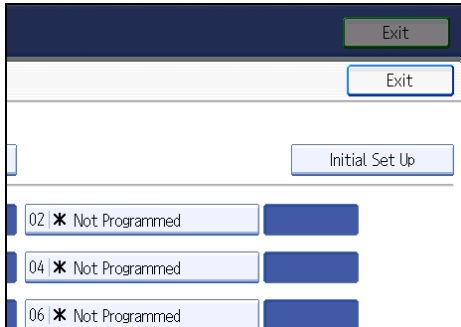
This section describes how to program Initial Set Up of a Special Sender.

Program the "Initial Set Up" of a Special Sender. You can also specify the Bypass Tray Paper Size.

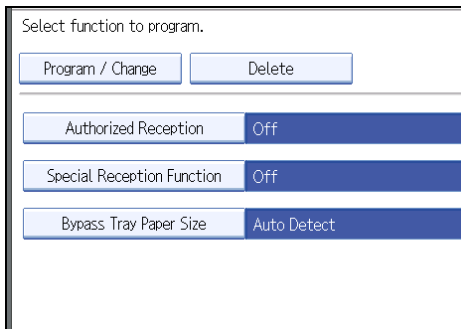
1. Press **[Facsimile Features]**.
2. Press **[Reception Settings]**.



3. Press [Program Special Sender].
4. Press [Initial Set Up].

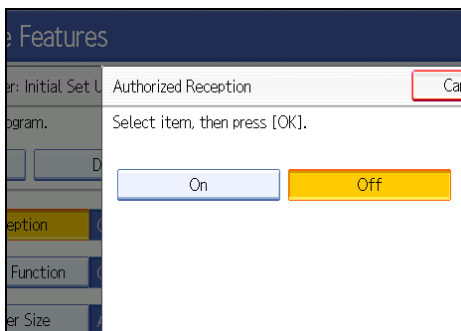


5. Select the function you want to program.



6. To program Authorized Reception and Special Reception Function, press [Authorized Reception] or [Special Reception Function].
7. Press [On] or [Off], and then press [OK].

The illustration shows the "Authorized Reception" display as an example.



8. To program Bypass Tray Paper Size, press [Bypass Tray Paper Size].

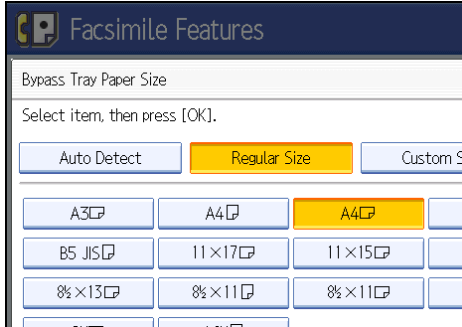
You can select a size from [Auto Detect], [Regular Size], or [Custom Size].

If you select [Auto Detect], proceed to steps 9 and 14.

If you select [Regular Size], proceed to steps 9, 10 and 14.

If you select [Custom Size], proceed to steps 9 and 11 to 14.

**9. Select the size you want to program.**



4

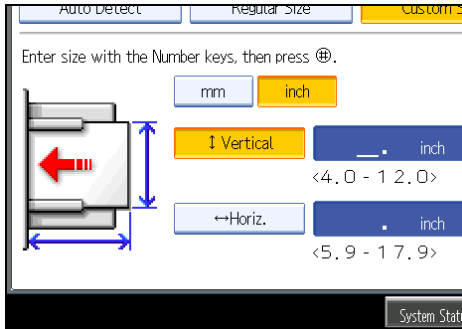
If you select [Regular Size], select a paper size displayed, and then proceed to step 14.

If you select [Custom Size], proceed to step 11.

**10. Select the size you want to program from the sizes shown.**

**11. Make sure that [Vertical] is selected.**

**12. Enter the vertical size of the paper using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.**

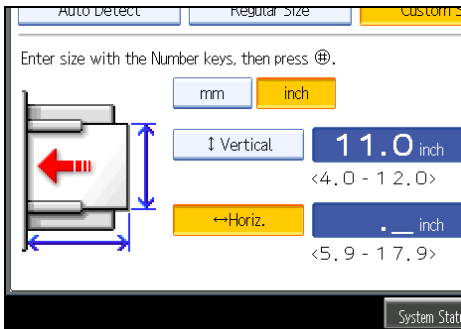


Specify a vertical size from 100 mm (4.0") to 305 mm (12.0"). You cannot enter a size smaller than 90 mm or larger than 305 mm.

Each time you press [mm] or [inch], the units switch between "mm" and "inch".

If you enter a length and change the units by pressing [mm] or [inch], it is converted automatically (fractions are rounded off).

**13. Enter the horizontal size of the paper using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.**



Specify a horizontal size from 148 mm (5.9") to 457 mm (17.9"). You cannot enter a size smaller than 148 mm or larger than 600 mm.

Each time you press [mm] or [inch], the units switch between "mm" and "inch".

If you enter a length and change the units by pressing [mm] or [inch], it is converted automatically (fractions are rounded off).

**14. Press [OK].**

**15. Press [Exit].**

**16. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

**Note**

- If you select [Auto Detect], the machine recognizes the paper size automatically.

## Deleting a Special Sender

This section describes how to delete a Special Sender.

Use this function to delete "Initial Set Up" of a Special Sender. The Bypass Tray Paper Size can also be deleted.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [Reception Settings].
3. Press [Program Special Sender].
4. Press [Delete], and then select the Special Sender you want to delete.
5. Press [Delete].

To cancel deleting a special sender, press [Do not Delete]. The display returns to that of step 4.

6. Press [Exit].
7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## Box Settings

This section describes Box Settings.

The following functions are for delivery and transfer of documents:

- Personal Box
- Information Box
- Transfer Box

### SUB Code and SEP Code

SUB Code and SEP Code are IDs consisting of up to 20 digits, and can include numbers, "#", "\*", and spaces.

To use this function, you must program a box and SUB/SEP Code beforehand. The other party can send documents to, and retrieve stored documents from, this box using the code.

#### Note

- The combined total of items that can be stored using the Personal Box, Information Box, and Transfer Box functions is 150.
- You cannot set the same Box code on two different boxes.
- Transmission or programming may not be allowed if there is not enough free memory left. The amount of free memory left differs depending on the optional equipment installed.

---

## Programming/Changing Personal Boxes

---

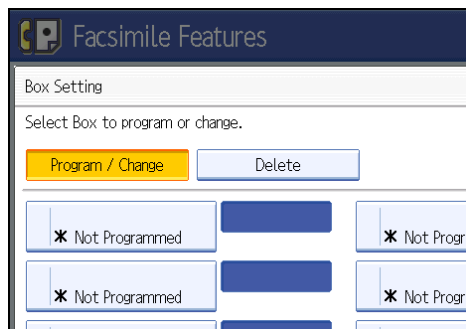
This section describes how to program Personal Boxes.

You can program the following items:

- Box name (required)  
Up to 20 characters long.
- SUB Code (required)  
Up to 20 characters long and can be composed of digits 0-9, "#", "\*", and spaces (the first character cannot be a space).
- Password (optional)  
Up to 20 characters long and can be composed of digits 0-9, "#", "\*", and spaces (the first character cannot be a space).  
When programming a password, a mark is displayed before the Box name.
- Receiver (optional)  
You can program one delivery destination for each Personal Box. Specify a delivery destination programmed in Destination key.

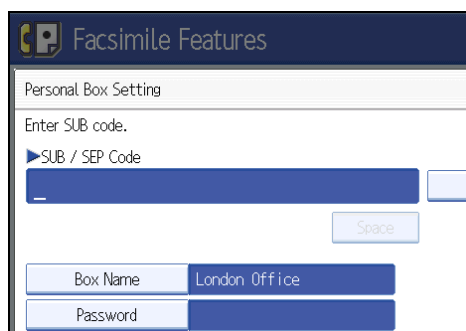
1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [General Settings].
3. Press [Box Setting].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Select a box to program.

When programming a new box, press [Not Programmed].



To change a box already programmed, press it and proceed to step 8.

6. Press [Personal Box].
7. Enter a box name, and then press [OK].
8. Enter a SUB Code.



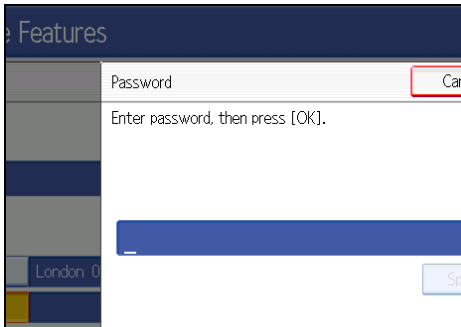
To change the SUB Code, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again. To change a Box name, press [Box Name], and then repeat from step 7.

9. Specify the settings you require.

If you do not want to program a password or receiver, proceed to step 16.

10. Press [Password].

**11. Enter a password, and then press [OK].**



If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.

**12. Re-enter the password, and then press [OK].**

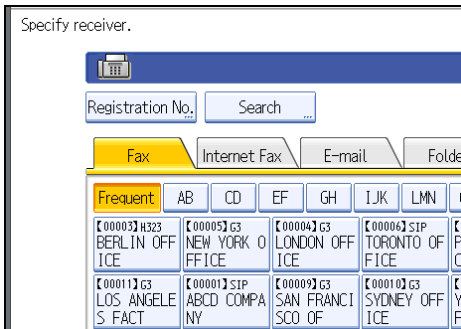
If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.

To change the password after pressing [OK], press [Change] and repeat step 11 and 12, or press [Cancel] and repeat from step 10.

**13. Press [OK].**

**14. Press [Receiver].**

**15. Select a destination using the destination list, and then press [OK].**



Press the key on the left of the display to switch the destination between fax number, e-mail address, Internet Fax destination, and folder destination.

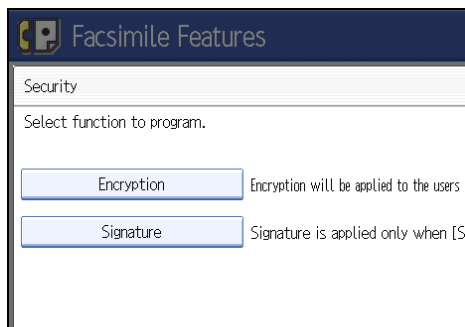
IP-Fax destination appears in the fax destination list.

**16. Press [Security].**

If not specifying the security function, proceed to step 18.

Security is set to use S/MIME authentication. For details about the security settings, consult your administrator.

## 17. Select the security functions.



To specify encryption for documents for delivery, press [Encryption]. To use the encryption function, the address must be stored in the Address Book and have the encryption option enabled. For details about Encryption, consult your administrator.

To attach a signature to documents for delivery, press [Signature]. For details about Signature, consult your administrator.

## 18. Press [OK].

## 19. Press [Exit].

## 20. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### ↓ Note

- When programming a password, a mark is displayed before the Box name.
- You can set the fax destination, Internet Fax destination, IP-Fax destination, e-mail destination, or folder destination, as a transmission destination.
- If you have specified e-mail destination or folder destination for the transmission destination, you can specify the file format used for delivery. See "Parameter Settings" (switch 21, bit 3).
- The Fax Header is not printed on delivered documents.
- If a document cannot be delivered, a Communication Failure Report is printed and the document is saved as a Confidential Reception document.
- You can edit boxes in the same way you program them. However, boxes that are being used cannot be edited.
- If a destination in the destination table is deleted after being registered, delivery is not performed and the settings of the delivery destination are also deleted. Also, when a delivery destination is changed, a document is sent to the changed destination. If there is no destination of the specified type, you can set which destination to be used as an alternative destination. See "Parameter Settings" (switch 32, bit 0).
- Select [Encrypt All] in the encryption settings and encrypted e-mail is sent regardless of the encryption settings in [Security]. For details about encryption, consult your administrator.

- The electronic signature is limited in the following ways, depending on the S/MIME settings on Web Image Monitor. For details about the electronic signature, consult your administrator.
  - If [Set Individually] is set:  
You can set [Signature] in [Security] and attach an electronic signature to email for every transmission.
  - If [Do not Use Signatures] is set:  
Even if you press [Security], [Signature] does not appear.
  - If [Use Signatures] is set:  
An electronic signature is attached when you send email. The [Signature] setting in [Security] cannot be cancelled.

**Reference**

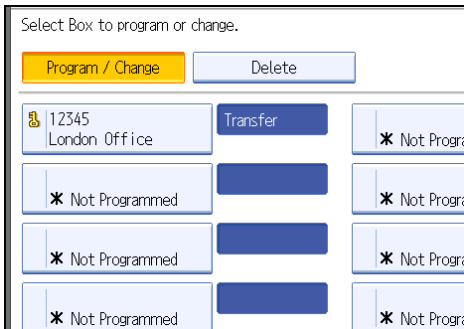
- p.163 "Parameter Settings"

## Deleting Personal Boxes

This section describes how to delete Personal Boxes.

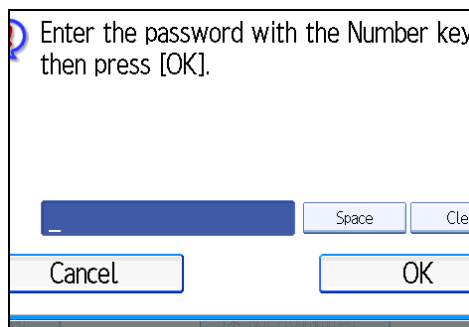
**Important**

- If there are documents in the box, you cannot delete the box.
1. Press [Facsimile Features].
  2. Press [General Settings].
  3. Press [Box Setting].
  4. Press [Delete], and then select the box you want to delete.





5. If the password is programmed, enter a password using the number keys, and then press [OK].



If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again.

6. Press [Delete].

To cancel deleting a box, press [Do not Delete]. The display returns to that of step 4.

7. Press [Exit].

8. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## Programming/Changing Information Boxes

This section describes how to set up an Information Box.

You can store the following items:

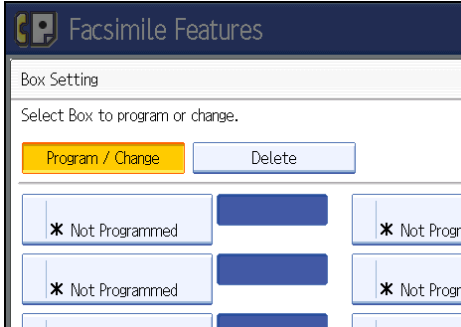
- Box name (required)  
Up to 20 characters long.
- SEP Code (required)  
Up to 20 characters long and can be composed of digits 0-9, "#", "\*", and spaces (the first character cannot be a space).
- Password (optional)  
Up to 20 characters long and can be composed of digits 0-9, "#", "\*", and spaces (the first character cannot be a space).

When programming a password, a mark is displayed before the Box name.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [General Settings].
3. Press [Box Setting].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

**5. Select the box to program.**

When programming a new box, press [Not Programmed].



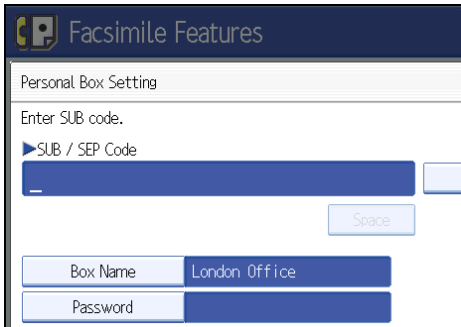
4

To change a box already programmed, press it, and then proceed to step 8. If a password is programmed, enter the password, press [OK], and then proceed to step 8.

**6. Press [Information Box].**

**7. Enter a box name, and then press [OK].**

**8. Enter the SEP Code.**

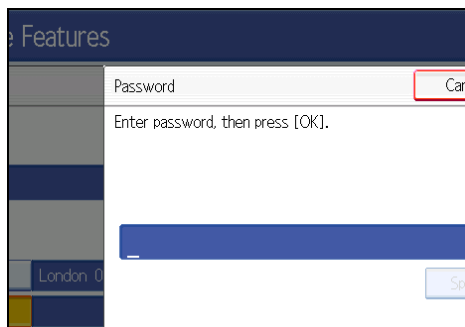


To change the SEP Code, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again. To change the box name, press [Box Name], and then repeat the procedure from step 7.

**9. Press [Password].**

If you do not want to program a password, proceed to step 12.

## 10. Enter a password, and then press [OK].



If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.

## 11. Re-enter the password, and then press [OK].

If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.

## 12. Press [OK].

## 13. Press [Exit].

## 14. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### Note

- You can edit boxes in the same way you program them. However, boxes that are being used cannot be edited.

### Reference

- p.163 "Parameter Settings"

## Deleting Information Boxes

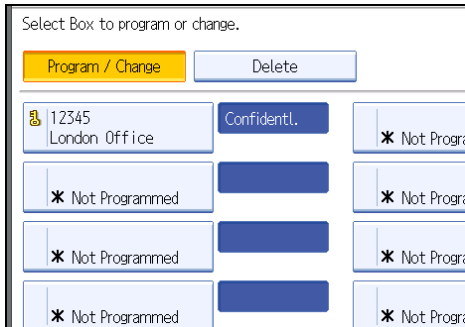
This section describes how to delete Information Boxes.

### Important

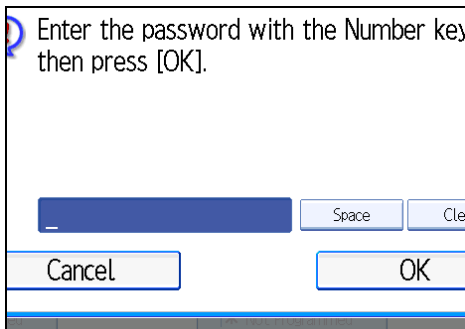
- If there are documents in the box, you cannot delete the box.

- Press [Facsimile Features].
- Press [General Settings].
- Press [Box Setting].

**4. Press [Delete], and then select the box you want to delete.**



**5. If the password is programmed, enter a password using the number keys, and then press [OK].**



If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again.

**6. Press [Delete].**

To cancel deleting a box, press [Do not Delete]. The display returns to that of step 4.

**7. Press [Exit].**

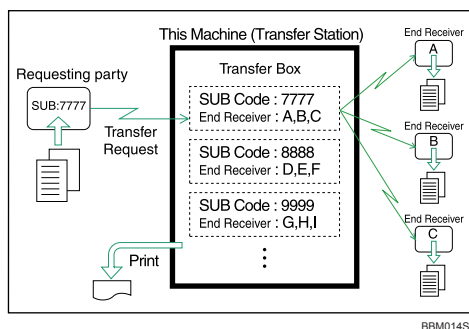
**8. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

## Programming/Changing Transfer Boxes

This section describes how to set up a Transfer Box.

This function turns the machine into a fax relay station. Documents sent with a SUB Code that matches the SUB Code programmed as a Transfer Box are received, and then relayed to a programmed receiver.

Since documents can be sent to multiple destinations in a single transfer request, you can economize on call charges when sending to distant destinations.



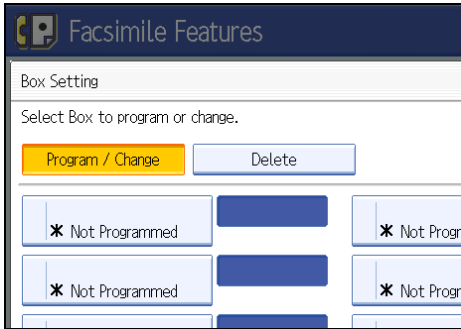
Inform the Requesting Party of the SUB Code assigned to the Transfer Box. When they want to have a document transferred by your machine, ask them to send the document using SUB Code Transmission and specify this SUB Code. If a password has also been programmed, inform them of this too, and ask them to enter it as the SID code.

You can store the following items:

- Box name (required)  
Up to 20 characters.
- SUB Code (required)  
Up to 20 characters long and can be composed of digits 0-9, "#", "\*", and spaces (the first character cannot be a space).
- End Receiver (required)  
You can store five End Receivers (destinations to which documents are forwarded) for each box. Specify End Receivers using a single or group destination programmed in the destination list beforehand.
- Password (optional)  
Up to 20 characters long and can be composed of digits 0-9, "#", "\*", and spaces (the first character cannot be a space).  
When programming a password, a mark is displayed in front of the Box name.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [General Settings].
3. Press [Box Setting].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Select the box to program.

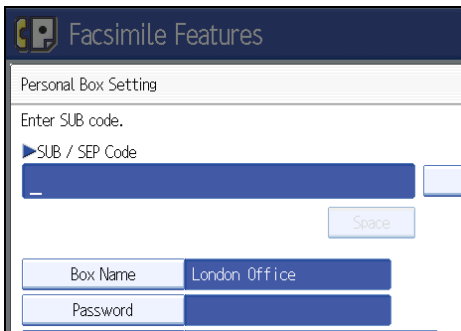
When programming a new box, press [Not Programmed].



To change a box already programmed, press it, and then proceed to step 8.

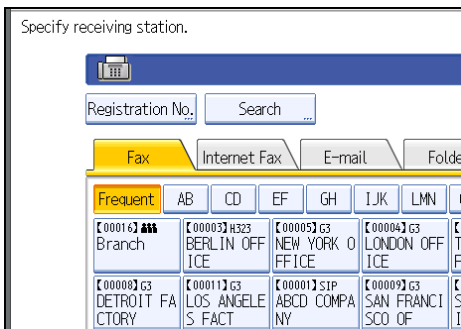
4

- 6. Press [Transfer Box].
- 7. Enter a Box name, and then press [OK].
- 8. Enter a SUB Code.



To change the SUB Code, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again. To change Box name, press [Box Name], and then repeat from step 7.

- 9. To Program End Receivers, select a Receiving Station.  
You can store five Receiving Station.
- 10. Specify End Receivers with Destination keys, and then press [OK].



Press the key on the left of the display to switch the destination between fax number, e-mail address, Internet Fax destination, and folder destination.

IP-Fax destination appears in the fax destination list.

A reception station can also be registered as a group destination. In such a case, a maximum of 500 parties including End Receivers 1-5 can be specified in a group.

**11. To program a password, press [Password].**

If you do not want to program a password, proceed to step 14.

**12. Enter a password, and then press [OK].**

If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.

**13. Re-enter the password, and then press [OK].**

If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key before pressing [OK], and then try again.

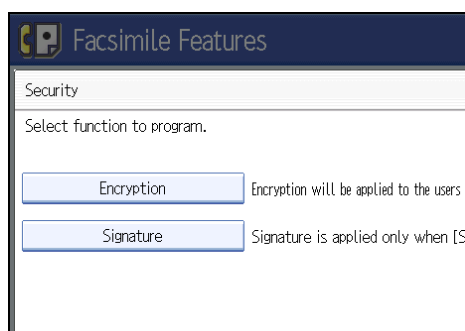
To change the password after pressing [OK], press [Change] and repeat step 12 and 13, or press [Cancel] and repeat from step 11.

**14. Press [Security].**

If not specifying the security function, proceed to step 17.

Security is set to use S/MIME authentication. For details about the security settings, consult your administrator.

**15. Select the security functions.**



To specify encryption for documents for transfer to receiving station, press [Encryption]. To use the encryption function, the address must be stored in the Address Book and have the encryption option enabled. For details about Encryption, consult your administrator.

To attach a signature to documents for documents for transfer to receiving station, press [Signature]. For details about Signature, consult your administrator.

**16. Press [OK].**

**17. Press [OK].**

**18. Press [Exit].**

**19. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

**Note**

- After documents are transferred, Transfer Result Reports are not sent back to the sender.

- You can set the fax destination, Internet Fax destination, IP-Fax destination, e-mail destination, or folder destination, as a reception station.
- If you have specified e-mail destination or folder destination for the transmission destination, you can specify the file format used for transferring to receiving station. See "Parameter Settings" (switch 21, bit 3).
- After documents are transferred, they are deleted.
- When this function is set to on, the machine prints out the received documents it transfers and a Transfer Result Report after the transfer has finished. If you do not want it to print, contact your service representative.
- You can edit boxes in the same way you program them.
- If you delete a destination specified as a reception destination using the destination list, the settings of the reception destination are also deleted, so they must be registered again. When a destination is changed, a document is transmitted to the new destination. If there is no destination of the specified type, you can set which destination to be used as an alternative destination. See "Parameter Settings" (switch 32, bit 0).
- Select [Encrypt All] in the encryption settings and encrypted e-mail is sent regardless of the encryption settings in [Security]. For details about encryption, consult your administrator.
- The electronic signature is limited in the following ways, depending on the S/MIME settings on Web Image Monitor. For details about the electronic signature, consult your administrator.
  - If [Set Individually] is set:  
You can set [Signature] in [Security] and attach an electronic signature to email for every transmission.
  - If [Do not Use Signatures] is set:  
Even if you press [Security], [Signature] does not appear.
  - If [Use Signatures] is set:  
An electronic signature is attached when you send email. The [Signature] setting in [Security] cannot be cancelled.

#### Reference

- p.163 "Parameter Settings"

---

## Deleting Transfer Boxes

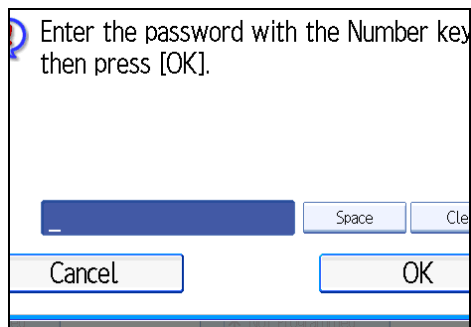
---

This section describes how to delete Transfer Boxes.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [General Settings].
3. Press [Box Setting].



4. Press [Delete], and then select the box you want to delete.
5. If the password is programmed, enter a password using the number keys, and then press [OK].



If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key, and then try again.

6. Press [Delete].  
To cancel deleting a Transfer Box, press [Do not Delete]. The display returns to that of step 4.
7. Press [Exit].
8. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

---

## Printing the Box List

---

This section describes how to print the Box List.

Print a list showing the currently programmed Personal Boxes, Information Boxes, and Transfer Boxes.

1. Press [Facsimile Features].
2. Press [General Settings].
3. Press [Box Setting: Print List].
4. Press the [Start] key.

After printing the list, you can then start from step 3.

To cancel printing a list before pressing the [Start] key, press [Cancel] or the [Clear/Stop] key. The display returns to that of step 3.

To cancel printing a list after pressing the [Start] key, press [Stop Printing]. The display returns to that of step 3.

5. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



# 5. Printer Features

This chapter describes user tools in the Printer Features menu. For details on how to access Printer Features, see "Accessing User Tools".

## List / Test Print

This section describes the user tools in the Test Print menu under Printer Features.

### Multiple Lists

You can print the configuration page and error log.

### Configuration Page

You can print the machine's current configuration values.

### Error Log

You can print error logs listing all errors that occurred during printing. The most recent 50 errors are stored in the error log. If a new error is added when there are 50 errors already stored, the oldest error is deleted. However, if the oldest error belongs to one of the following types of print jobs, it is not deleted. Instead, it will be stored separately in error logs for each job type, up to a maximum of 30 for each log. You can check any of these print jobs for error log information.

- Sample Print
- Locked Print
- Hold Print
- Stored Print

The records of Auto Job Cancel and jobs canceled manually from the control panel can be printed.

### Menu List

You can print a Menu List showing the machine's function menus.

### PCL Configuration / Font Page

You can print the current configuration and installed PCL font list.

### PS Configuration / Font Page

You can print the current configuration and installed PostScript font list.

This menu can be selected only when the optional PostScript 3 unit is installed.

### PDF Configuration / Font Page

You can print the current configuration and installed PDF font list.

This menu can be selected only when the optional PostScript 3 unit is installed.

### Hex Dump

You can print in the Hex Dump mode.

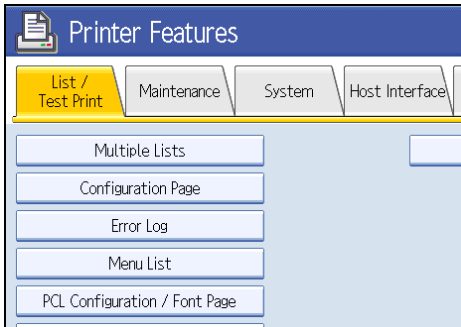
---

## Printing the Configuration Page

---

This section describes how to print the Configuration Page.

1. Press [Printer Features].
2. Press [Configuration Page] on the [List / Test Print].



5

The configuration page is printed.

3. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

---

## Interpreting the configuration page

---

This section describes the Configuration Page.

### System Reference

- Unit Number  
Displays the serial number assigned to the board by its manufacturer.
- Total Memory  
Displays the total amount of memory (SDRAM) installed on the printer.
- Firmware Version
  - Printer  
Displays the version number of the printer firmware.
  - System  
Displays the version number of the system firmware.
  - Engine  
Displays the version number of the printer engine.
  - LCDC  
Displays the version number of the panel display.
  - NIB

Displays the version number of the Network interface.

- **Device Connection**  
This item(s) appears when the device option(s) is installed.
- **HDD: Font / Macro Download**  
Displays the capacity of the hard disk drive.
- **Printer Language**  
Displays the version number of the printer driver language.
- **Connection Equipment**  
Displays the installed optional equipments.

### **Paper Input**

Displays settings made under Tray Paper Settings menu.

### **System**

Displays settings made under the System menu.

### **PCL Menu**

Displays settings made under PCL Menu.

### **PS Menu**

Displays settings made under PS Menu.

### **PDF Menu**

Displays settings made under PDF Menu.

### **Host Interface**

Displays settings made under the Host Interface menu.

When DHCP is active on the network, the actual IPv4 address, subnet mask and gateway address appear in parentheses on the configuration page.

### **Interface Information**

Displays the interface information.

#### **Reference**

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

# Maintenance

This section describes the user tools in the Maintenance menu under Printer Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

## List / Test Print Lock

You can lock the [List / Test Print] menu.

The default setting is **Off**.

## Delete All Temporary Print Jobs

You can delete all print jobs temporarily stored in the machine.

## Delete All Stored Print Jobs

You can delete all print jobs stored in the machine.

## 4 Color Graphic Mode

- Text Priority

Use the optimum CMYK toner combination for text printing.

- Photo Priority

Use the optimum CMYK toner combination for photo printing.

The default setting is **Photo Priority**.

### Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

# System

This section describes the user tools in the System menu under Printer Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

## Print Error Report

Select this to have an error report printed when a printer or memory error occurs.

The default setting is **Off**.

## Auto Continue

You can select this to enable Auto Continue. When it is On, printing continues after a system error occurs.

The default setting is **Off**.

## Memory Overflow

Select this to have a memory overflow error report printed.

The default setting is **Do not Print**.

## Job Separation

You can enable Job Separation.

This menu can be selected only when a finisher (optional) is installed.

The default setting is **Off**.

## Rotate by 180 Degrees

Specify whether to rotate the print image 180 degrees relative to the paper orientation.

The default setting is **Off**.

## Auto Delete Temporary Print Jobs

You can select to automatically delete print jobs temporarily stored in the machine.

The default setting is **Off**.

If you select [On], you can set up to 200 hours for auto file deleting.

## Auto Delete Stored Print Jobs

You can select to automatically delete print jobs stored in the machine.

The default setting is **On, 3 day(s)**.

If you select [On], you can set up to 180 days for auto file deleting.

## Initial Print Job List

You can set the desired type of print job list that appears on the screen when you press [Print Jobs].

The default setting is **Complete List**.

- Complete List

Displays the list of print jobs stored in the machine.

- List Per User ID

Displays the list of the User ID who stored a file in the machine.

### Memory Usage

You can select the amount of memory used in Font Priority or Frame Priority, according to paper size or resolution.

The default setting is **Frame Priority**.

- Font Priority

This setting uses memory for registering fonts.

- Frame Priority

This setting uses frame memory for high speed printing.

### Duplex

You can select to have print on both sides of each page.

The default setting is **Off**.

### Copies

You can specify the number of print sets. This setting is disabled if the number of pages to print has been specified with the printer driver or another command.

The number of copies can be specified from 1 to 999 by increments of one.

The default setting is **1 copies**.

### Blank Page Print

You can select whether or not to print blank pages.

The default setting is **On**.

Pages that match one of the following conditions are identified as blank.

- There are no images.
- There are images but they are outside the printable area.
- There are only blank characters.

### Spool Image

You can select to print spool images. The print job transmitted from the computer is temporarily stored on the machine's hard disk as bitmap images that can be printed when transmission is complete. If more than one print job is transmitted, a spool image is printed for each.

The default setting is **Off**.

### Reserved Job Waiting Time

You can specify how long the machine waits to receive a print job before allowing other functions such as the copier and scanner functions to interrupt it.



The default setting is **Short Wait**.

### Printer Language

Specify the printer language.

The default setting is **Auto**.

### Sub Paper Size

You can enable the Auto Substitute Paper Size (A4, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11) feature.

The default setting is **Off**.

### Page Size

You can select the default paper size.

- The paper size you can select is as follows:

A3, A4, A5, A6, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, 12×18, 11×17, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×14, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×13, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×13, 8×13, 7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>×10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>, 5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>, 8K, 16K, Custom Size

The default setting is **A4** (Metric version) / **8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>×11** (Inch version).

### Letterhead Setting

You can rotate original images when printing.

When printing, original images are always rotated by 180 degrees. Therefore, output might not be as expected when printing onto letterhead or preprinted paper requiring orientation. Using this function, you can specify image rotation.

The default setting is **Off**.

- Off

When set to Off, original images are rotated by 180 degrees.

- Auto Detect

When set to Auto Detect, the machine detects a letterhead or preprinted paper automatically, and does not rotate the image.

- On (Always)

When set to On (Always), the machine does not rotate.

This function reduces printing speed.

### Bypass Tray Setting Priority

Specify whether (Printer) Driver / Command or Machine Settings, has priority for determining the paper size for the bypass tray.

The default setting is **Driver / Command**.

### Edge to Edge Print

You can select whether or not to print on the entire sheet.

The default setting is **Off**.

The 5 mm margin along the edges may not be printed properly.

### **Default Printer Language**

You can set the default printer language if the machine cannot find the printer language automatically.

The default setting is **PCL**.

### **Tray Switching**

You can set to switch the paper tray.

The default setting is **Off**.

#### **Reference**

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

# Host Interface

This section describes the user tools in the Host Interface menu under Printer Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

## I/O Buffer

You can set the size of the I/O Buffer. Normally it is not necessary to change this setting.

The default setting is **128 KB**.

## I/O Timeout

You can set how many seconds the machine should wait before ending a print job. If data from another port usually arrives in the middle of a print job, you should increase this timeout period.

The default setting is **15 second (s)**.

### Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

## PCL Menu

This section describes the user tools in the PCL Menu under Printer Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

This menu appears only when the PCL option is installed.

### Orientation

You can set the page orientation.

The default setting is **Portrait**.

### Form Lines

You can set the number of lines per page.

The number of lines can be specified from 5 to 128 by increments of one.

The default setting is **64 lines** (Metric version) / **60 lines** (Inch version).

### Font Source

You can set the storage location of the default font.

The default setting is **Resident**.

RAM, HDD and SD can be selected only when fonts have been downloaded to the machine.

### Font Number

You can set the ID of the default font you want to use.

- When [Resident] is selected under "Font Source":

The font number can be specified from 0 to 63 by increments of one.

The default setting is **0**.

- When [RAM], [HDD], or [SD] is selected under "Font Source":

The font number can be specified from 1 up to number of fonts stored on the machine.

The default setting is **1**.

### Point Size

You can set the point size you want to use for the selected font.

The number of point sizes can be specified from 4.00 to 999.75 by increments of 0.25.

This setting is effective only with variable-space fonts.

The default setting is **12.00 points**.

### Font Pitch

You can set the number of characters per inch for the selected font.

The number of characters per inch can be specified from 0.44 to 99.99 by increments of 0.01.

This setting is effective only with fixed-space fonts.

The default setting is **10.00 pitches**.

### Symbol Set

Specify the character set of the selected font. The available options are as follows:

- Roman-8, ISO L1, ISO L2, ISO L5, PC-8, PC-8 D/N, PC-850, PC-852, PC8-TK, Win L1, Win L2, Win L5, Desktop, PS Text, VN Intl, VN US, MS Publ, Math-8, PS Math, VN Math, Pifont, Legal, ISO 4, ISO 6, ISO 11, ISO 15, ISO 17, ISO 21, ISO 60, ISO 69, Win 3.0

The default setting is **PC-8**.

### Courier Font

You can select a courier font type.

The default setting is **Regular**.

### Extend A4 Width

You can extend the printing area width (when printing on A4 sheet with PCL).

The default setting is **Off**.

When the setting is On, the width will be 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> inches.

### Append CR to LF

When set to On, a carriage return will follow each line feed: CR=CR, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF.

The default setting is **Off**.

### Resolution

You can set the print resolution in dots per inch.

The default setting is **600 dpi (Standard)**.

### Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

## PS Menu

This section describes the user tools in the PS Menu under Printer Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

This menu appears only when the optional PostScript 3 unit is installed.

### Data Format

You can select a data format.

The default setting is **TBCP**.

This setting is not effective when operating the machine with an EtherTalk connection.

When operating the machine with an Ethernet connection, the print job is canceled under the following conditions:

- The printer driver data format is TBCP, and the data format selected on the display panel is Binary Data.
- The printer driver data format is binary, and the data format selected on the display panel is TBCP.

### Resolution

You can set the print resolution in dots per inch.

The default setting is **600 dpi (Standard)**.

### Color Setting

You can make an RGB setting.

The default setting is **Super Fine**.

### Color Profile

You can set the color profile.

The default setting is **Auto**.

### Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

# PDF Menu

This section describes the user tools in the PDF Menu under Printer Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

## Change PDF Password

Set the password for the PDF file executing PDF Direct Print.

- Current Password
- New Password
- Confirm New Password

A password can be set using Web Image Monitor, but in this case the password information is sent through the network. If security is a priority, set the password using this menu from the Control Panel.

## PDF Group Password

Set the group password already specified with DeskTopBinder.

- Current Password
- New Password
- Confirm New Password

A password can be set using Web Image Monitor, but in this case the password information is sent through the network. If security is a priority, set the password using this menu from the Control Panel.

## Resolution

You can set the print resolution in dots per inch.

The default setting is **600 dpi (Standard)**.

## Color Setting

You can make an RGB setting.

The default setting is **Super Fine**.

## Color Profile

You can set the color profile.

The default setting is **Auto**.

## Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"





# 6. Scanner Features

This chapter describes user tools in the Scanner Features menu. For details on how to access Scanner Features, see "Accessing User Tools".

## General Settings

This section describes the user tools in the General Settings menu under Scanner Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

### Switch Title

Select the title to be shown on the destination list.

The default setting is **Title 1**.

### Search Destination

Select a destination list to be used in "Search Destination". To search from LDAP server, it is necessary to register the LDAP server in [System Settings] and set [LDAP Search] to [On].

The default setting is **Address Book**.

For details about "LDAP Search", see "Administrator Tools".

### TWAIN Standby Time

When the machine is being used to send e-mail or a file, or functioning as Document Server, a scanning request to the machine as a TWAIN scanner will switch the machine to the network TWAIN scanner function. This setting determines the delay until the machine switches to the network TWAIN scanner function.

The default setting is **Set Time, 10 second(s)**.

When [Immediate] is selected, the machine will switch to the network TWAIN scanner function at once.

When [Set Time] is selected, you can enter the delay time with the number keys (3-30 seconds). The machine will switch to the network TWAIN scanner function when the time set here passes after the last key operation.

### Destination List Display Priority

In the machine's address book, select which address book appears by default.

You can select either [E-mail Address] or [Folder].

The default setting is **E-mail Address**.

### Print & Delete Scanner Journal

Up to 250 transmission results can be checked on this machine. If the stored transmission results reach 250, select whether to print the transmission journal.

The default setting is **On**.

- On  
The transmission journal is printed automatically. The printed journal is deleted.
- Off  
Transmission results are deleted one by one as new results are stored.
- Do not Print: Disable Send  
Transmission cannot be performed when the journal is full.  
When printed, all records are deleted after printing. When not printed, records over the limit are automatically deleted in succession from the oldest record.  
While the journal is being printed, files with the status waiting cannot be sent.

### **Print Scanner Journal**

The scanner journal is printed and deleted.

### **Delete Scanner Journal**

The scanner journal is deleted without being printed.

#### **Reference**

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"
- p.62 "File Transfer"
- p.68 "Administrator Tools"

# Scan Settings

This section describes the user tools in the Scan Settings menu under Scanner Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

## A.C.S. Sensitivity Level

Sets the sensitivity level for judging color/black and white for scanning originals when [Scan Type] is set to [Auto Color Select].

The default setting is level 2 of 5 adjustment levels.

## Wait Time for Next Orig.: Exposure Glass

To divide originals and scan them individually with the exposure glass to form a single file, select [Continuous Wait], [Off], or [Set Wait Time] for the waiting status.

The default setting is **Set Wait Time, 60 second (s)**.

If you select [SADF] in [Original Feed Type] on the Scan to Folder screen, the [Wait Time for Next Orig.: Exposure Glass] setting becomes invalid.

If you select [Batch] in [Original Feed Type] on the Scan to Folder screen, the [Wait Time for Next Orig.: Exposure Glass] setting becomes invalid, and the machine waits for an additional original to be placed.

If [Set Wait Time] is selected, enter the wait time in seconds (3-999) for placing additional originals with the number keys. Scanning will start if additional originals are placed and the [Start] key is pressed within this time. You can end scanning and begin transmission by pressing the [#] key within this time. Once the specified time has elapsed, transmission starts automatically.

If [Continuous Wait] is selected, the machine will wait for additional originals until the [#] key is pressed. Scanning will start when additional originals are placed and the [Start] key is pressed. You can end scanning and begin sending by pressing the [#] key.

If originals are placed in the ADF (auto document feeder), transmission will start without waiting for additional originals after all originals in the ADF have been scanned, regardless of the specified settings.

If a paper misfeed occurs or any of the following operations are performed while the machine is waiting for additional originals, the countdown stops and does not start again until the [#] key is pressed.

- Changing the settings such as the scan settings
- Opening the upper cover of the ADF
- Pressing the [Interrupt] key to activate the copy mode

## Wait Time for Next Original(s): SADF

When dividing originals and scanning them separately with the ADF to form a single file, select [Set Wait Time] or [Continuous Wait] for the waiting status.

The default setting is **Set Wait Time, 60 second (s)**.

This setting is valid if [SADF] is specified for [Original Feed Type] when scanning.

If [Set Wait Time] is selected, enter the wait time in seconds (3-999) for placing additional originals with the number keys. Scanning will start automatically if additional originals are placed within this time. You can end scanning and begin transmission by pressing the [#] key within this time. Once the specified time has elapsed, transmission starts automatically.

If [Continuous Wait] is selected, the machine will wait for the additional originals until the [#] key is pressed. Scanning will start when additional originals are placed and the [Start] key is pressed. You can end scanning and begin sending by pressing the [#] key.

Even if originals are placed on the exposure glass, the machine will operate according to the specified settings. However, every time originals are placed on the exposure glass, you must press the [Start] key to start scanning. Scanning will start if additional originals are placed and the [Start] key is pressed within this time. You can end scanning and begin transmission by pressing the [#] key within this time. Once the specified time has elapsed, transmission starts automatically.

If originals are placed in the auto document feeder (ADF), transmission will start without waiting for additional originals after all originals in the ADF have been scanned, regardless of the specified settings.

If a paper misfeed occurs or any of the following operations are performed while the machine is waiting for additional originals, the countdown stops and does not start again until the [#] key is pressed.

- Changing the settings such as the scan settings
- Opening the upper cover of the ADF
- Pressing the [Interrupt] key to activate the copy mode

### Background Density of ADS (Full Color)

Characteristics due to the type of paper such as nonwhiteness like newspaper or transparent originals can be reduced by correcting the scanning density.

The default setting is the middle of 5 adjustment levels.

#### Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

# Send Settings

This section describes the user tools in the Send Settings menu under Scanner Features.

Default settings are shown in **bold type**.

## Compression (Black & White)

Select whether or not to compress black and white scan files.

The default setting is **On**.

Compression reduces the time required for transferring the scan file.

The actual time required for file transfer will vary depending on the file size and network load.

## Compression (Gray Scale / Full Color)

Specify whether or not to compress multi-level (grayscale / full color) scan files.

The default setting is **On**.

If you select [On], you can specify the compression level between one and five.

The image quality is better for lower compression, but the time required for file transfer increases accordingly.

The actual time required for file transfer will vary depending on the file size and network load.

## High Compression PDF Level

Select compression level when creating high compression PDF files.

The default setting is **Standard**.

## Max. E-mail Size

Select whether or not to limit the size of an e-mail to which an image is attached.

The default setting is **On, 2048KB**.

When [On] is selected, enter the size limit (128-102400 KB) with the number keys.

When the SMTP limits the size, match that setting.

## Divide & Send E-mail

This function is effective only when [On] is selected for [Max. E-mail Size].

Select whether or not an image exceeding the size specified in [Max. E-mail Size] should be divided and sent using more than one e-mail.

The default setting is **Yes (per max. size)**.

The default maximum number of divisions is **5**.

When [Yes (per Max. Size)] is selected, enter the Max. Number of Divisions (2-500) with the number keys.

When [Multi-page: TIFF] or [Multi-page: PDF] is selected for [File Type], the image will not be divided even if [Yes (per Page)] is selected.

When [Yes (per Max. Size)] is selected, some received files may not be able to be restored, depending on the type of e-mail software.

When [No] is selected, the e-mail is not sent if its size exceeds the limit, and an error message appears. The scan file is discarded.

Set the maximum e-mail size within the capacity of the SMTP server.

### **Insert Additional E-mail Info**

Select the language in which e-mail information such as title, document name, and sender's name is sent.

If you select [On], select one of the following 22 languages:

British English, American English, German, French, Italian, Spanish, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Czech, Swedish, Finnish, Hungarian, Norwegian, Danish, Japanese, Simplified Chinese, Traditional Chinese, Russian, Hangul, Catalan, and Turkish.

The default setting is **On, American English**.

The e-mail text which is a template cannot be changed.

### **No. of Digits for Single Page Files**

Sets digit number for serial number to attach to Single Page file name.

The default setting is **4 Digits**.

### **Stored File E-mail Method**

Specify the e-mail setting for sending stored files. You can select [Send File] or [Send URL Link]. This setting can be used for the following:

The default setting is **Send File**.

- Send File  
Sending Stored Files by E-mail
- Send URL Link  
Simultaneous Storage and Sending by E-mail

If you select [Send File], actual files are attached to e-mails.

If you select [Send URL Link], URL links to file locations are attached to e-mails.

If [Stored File E-mail Method] is set in [Send URL Link], a phishing warning may appear after you receive a stored file e-mail, depending on your e-mail application. To prevent phishing warnings appearing after you receive a stored file e-mail, you must add the sender to your e-mail application's exclusion list. For details about how to do this, see your e-mail application's Help.

### **Reference**

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

# 7. Registering Addresses and Users for Facsimile/Scanner Functions

This chapter describes how to register destinations and users in the Address Book. For details on how to access System Settings, see "Accessing User Tools".

## Address Book

This section describes Address Book settings.

Registering information such as the names of users and their e-mail addresses in the Address Book allows you to manage them easily.

### ★ Important

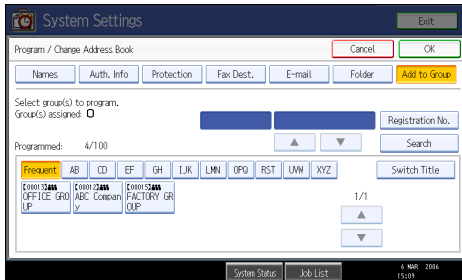
- Address Book data is stored on the hard disk. It can be lost if there is some kind of hard disk failure.
- The manufacturer shall not be held responsible for any damages resulting in data loss.

You can register and manage the following items in the Address Book:

#### Names

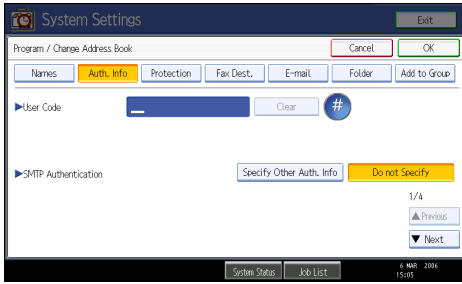
You can register the name of the user and the key display. This is the basic information required for managing users of the machine.

To register a fax number or e-mail address in the address book, you must register information such as the user name and destination name in advance.



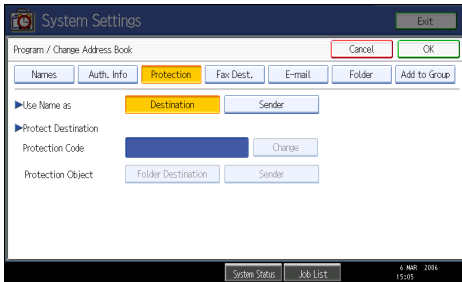
#### Auth. Info

You can register user codes in order to restrict particular functions to certain users, and to check their use of each function. You can also register login user names and login passwords to be used when sending e-mail, sending to folders, or accessing an LDAP server.



### Protection

You can set protection codes to stop sender's name from being used or folders from being accessed without authorization.

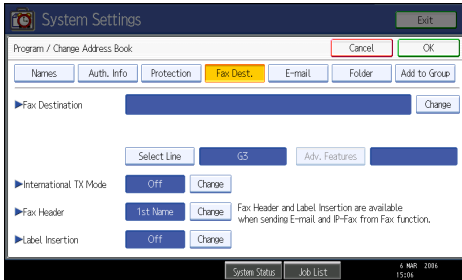


## 7

### Fax Dest.

You can register fax numbers, line, fax header and select label insertion.

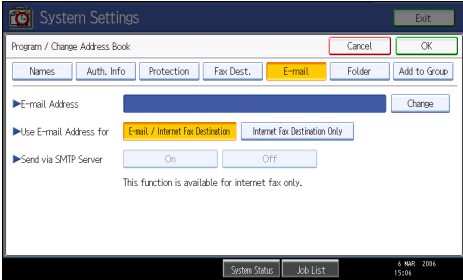
When using IP-Fax, you can register the IP-Fax destination and select the protocol.



### E-mail

You can register e-mail destinations in the Address Book.

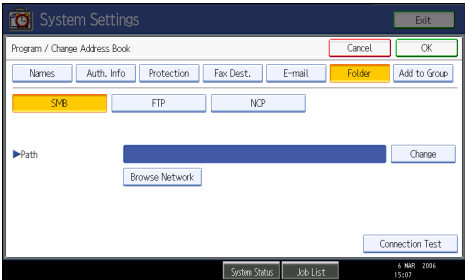




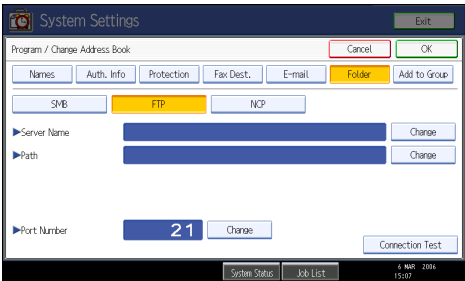
**Folder**

You can register the protocol, path name and server name.

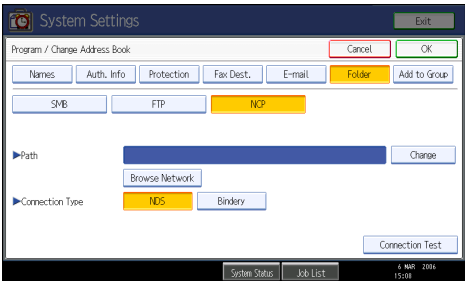
- SMB



- FTP

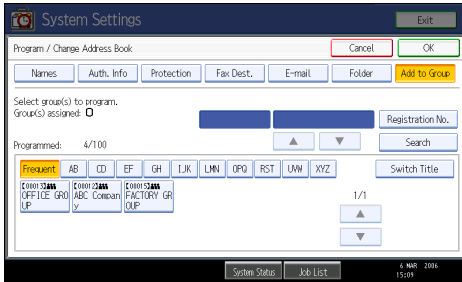


- NCP



**Add to Group**

You can put registered e-mail and folder destinations into a group for easier management.



**Note**

- You can also use Web Image Monitor to register names in the Address Book. With SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, you can register multiple names at the same time. For details about using Web Image Monitor, see Web Image Monitor Help.
- The Help files for Web Image Monitor are stored on the supplied CD-ROM. Access them from the CD-ROM. You cannot download the Help files from our Web site.
- Using Address Management Tool in SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, you can backup Address Book data. We recommend backing up data when using the Address Book. For operating instructions, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

**7**

## Managing names in the Address Book

By registering a name and key display beforehand, you can specify e-mail and folder destinations simply by selecting the name key.

**Reference**

- p.227 "Registering Names"

## Sending fax by Quick Dial

Register a fax number in the Address Book so you can specify it only by selecting the fax destination, shown on the fax initial display when sending a fax. When label insertion is set to "On", the receiver's name and standard messages are printed on the fax message when it is received at the other end.

By registering IP-Fax destinations in the Address Book, you can specify a destination simply by selecting it from the destinations that appear in the initial fax display. Registered IP-Fax numbers can be used and printed as sender's IP-Fax numbers.

**Reference**

- p.240 "Fax Destination"

---

## Sending e-mail by Quick Dial

---

By registering e-mail addresses in the Address Book, you can specify e-mail destinations simply by selecting them from the fax initial display when sending a document by Internet fax or e-mail.

You can also specify an e-mail address by selecting the destination shown on the initial scanner display when sending a document using the scanner function. A registered e-mail address can be used as the sender's address, and the sender's addresses are automatically entered in the "From" field of an e-mail header.

### Reference

- p.255 "E-mail Destination"

---

## Sending received fax documents or scanned files to a shared folder directly

---

After registering the path name, user name and password, you can connect to a shared folder simply by selecting the destination shown on the initial facsimile display whenever sending files using the facsimile function to a shared folder. You can also connect to a shared folder by selecting the destination shown on the initial scanner display whenever sending files using the scanner function.

To share the folder using Windows, select the SMB protocol.

To register the folder to the FTP server, select the FTP protocol.

To register the folder to the NetWare server, select the NCP protocol.

### Reference

- p.260 "Registering Folders"

---

## Preventing unauthorized user access to shared folders from the machine

---

After registering a protection code, you can specify the object of protection to prevent an e-mail destination from being used without permission.

You can prevent unauthorized access to registered folders.

### Reference

- p.288 "Registering a Protection Code"

---

## Managing users and machine usage

---

Register user codes to limit users to the following functions and check their use of each function:

- Copier
- Document Server

- Facsimile
- Printer
- Scanner

**Reference**

- p.231 "Authentication Information"

# Registering Names

Register user information including their names.

The user name is useful for selecting a destination when sending faxes or e-mail.

You can also use it as a folder destination.

You can register up to 2000 names.

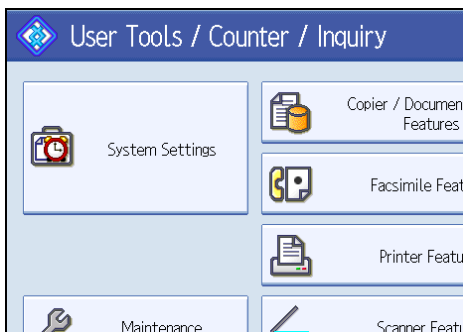
---

## Registering Names

---

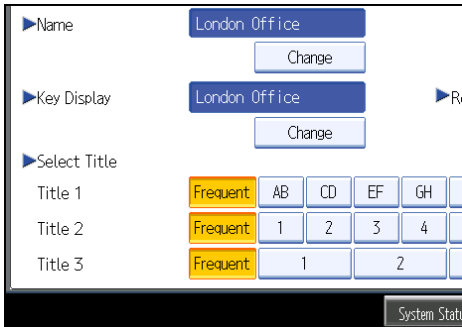
This section describes how to register names.

1. Press [System Settings].



2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book Management].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Press [New Program].
6. Press [Change] on the right of the Name.  
The name entry display appears.
7. Enter the name, and then press [OK].

**8. Press the key for the classification you want to use under "Select Title".**



The keys you can select are as follows:

- [Frequent]: Added to the page that is displayed first.
- [AB], [CD], [EF], [GH], [IJK], [LMN], [OPQ], [RST], [UVW], [XYZ], [1] to [10]: Added to the list of items in the selected title.

You can select [Frequent] and one more page for each title.

**9. Press [OK].**

**10. Press [Exit].**

**11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

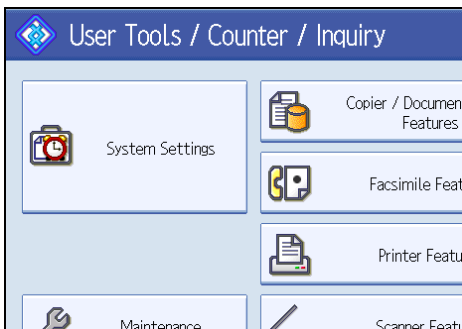
**Note**

- The name can be used for documents in the Document Server. For details about the Document Server, see "Using the Document Server", Copy/ Document Server Reference.

## Changing a Registered Name

This section describes how to change a name.

**1. Press [System Settings].**



**2. Press [Administrator Tools].**

3. Press [Address Book Management].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Select the registered name you want to change.  
Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.
6. To change the name or key display, press [Change] on the right of the "Name" or "Key Display".
7. Enter the name or key display, and then press [OK].
8. To change the title, press the key for the classification you want to use from "Select Title".
9. To change the registration number, press [Change] under "Registration No.".
10. Enter a new registration number using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.
11. Press [OK].
12. Press [Exit].
13. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

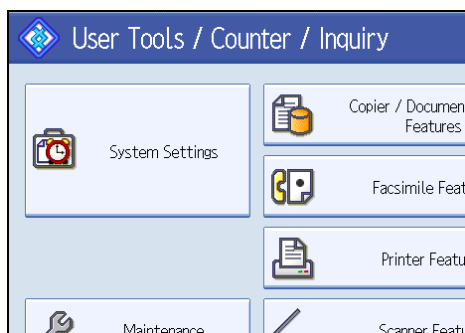
#### ↓ Note

- You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

## Deleting a Registered Name

This section describes how to delete a name.

1. Press [System Settings].



2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book Management].
4. Press [Delete].
5. Select the name you want to delete.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

6. Press [OK].
7. Press [Exit].
8. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



# Authentication Information

Following describes the procedure for authenticating a user code.

## ★ Important

- **The functions associated with each user code are the same. If you change or delete user codes, management data and limits associated with that code become invalid.**

Register user codes to limit users to the following functions and check their use of each function:

- Copier
- Document Server
- Facsimile
- Printer
- Scanner

## ↓ Note

- You can register up to 500 user codes.
- The number of copies made of documents stored in the Document Server using the facsimile function is counted for each user code. This allows you to check each user's usage.
- The number of copies scanned using the scanner function is counted for each user code. This allows you to check each user's usage.
- To automatically register the printer driver user code, select [PC Control] under Printer for the printer in User Code Authentication. To use the user code set in User Tools, set the user codes registered in User Tools for the printer driver.
- For details about setting user codes for the printer driver, see the printer driver Help.

## 📖 Reference

- p.68 "Administrator Tools"

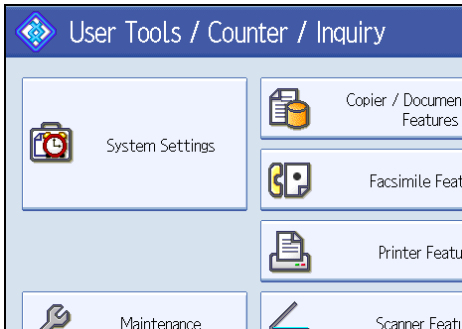
---

## Registering a User Code

---

This section describes how to register a user code.

**1. Press [System Settings].**



**2. Press [Administrator Tools].**

**3. Press [Address Book Management].**

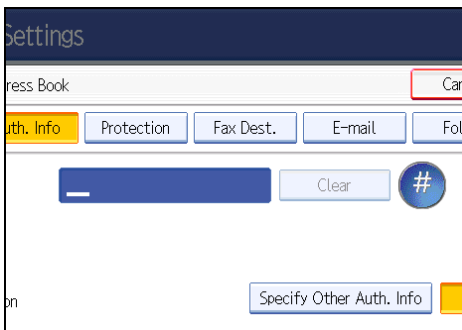
**4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.**

**5. Press the name whose code is to be registered, or enter the registered number using the number key.**

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

**6. Press [Auth. Info].**

**7. Enter the user code using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.**



If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key.

**8. Press [▼Next] twice.**

**9. Select the functions to be used with the user code from "Available Functions".**

**10. Press [OK].**

**11. Press [Exit].**

**12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

**Note**

- You can enter a one-to eight-digit user code.

- To register the name, see "Registering Names".

### Reference

- p.227 "Registering Names"

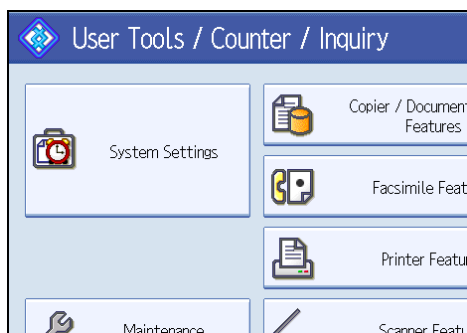
## Changing a User Code

This section describes how to change a user code.

### Important

- Even if you change a user code, the counter value will not be cleared.

#### 1. Press [System Settings].



#### 2. Press [Administrator Tools].

#### 3. Press [Address Book Management].

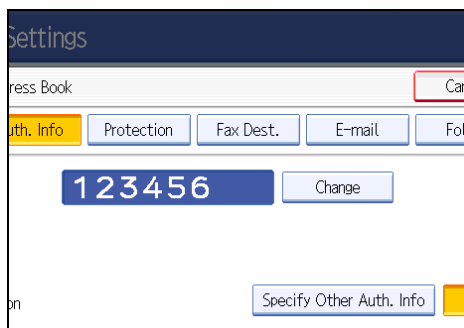
#### 4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

#### 5. Select the user whose user code you want to change.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys. You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

#### 6. Press [Auth. Info].

#### 7. Press [Change], and then enter the new user code using the number keys.



8. Press the [#] key.
9. To change the available functions, press [Auth. Info], and then press [▼Next] twice.
10. Press the key to select the functions to enable them.  
Press the key to highlight it, and then the function is enabled. To cancel a selection, press the highlighted key.
11. Press [OK].
12. Press [Exit].
13. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

**Note**

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Changing a Registered Name".

**Reference**

- p.228 "Changing a Registered Name"

---

## Deleting a User Code

---

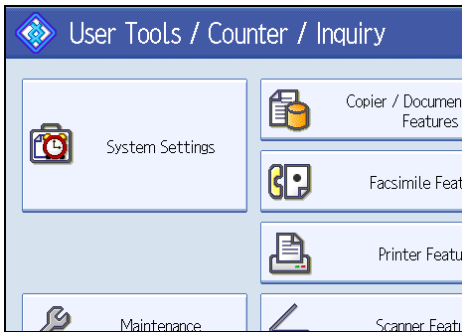
This section describes how to delete a user code.

7

**★ Important**

- After clearing the user code, the counter is automatically cleared.

1. Press [System Settings].

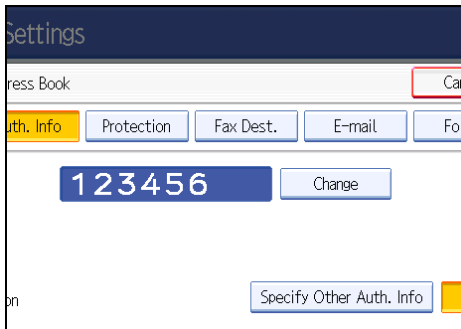


2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book Management].
4. Press [Program / Change].
5. Select the name whose code is to be deleted.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

6. Press [Auth. Info].
7. Press [Change] to delete the user code, and then press the [#] key.



8. Press [OK].
9. Press [Exit].
10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### ↓ Note

- To delete a name from the Address Book entirely, see "Deleting a Registered Name".

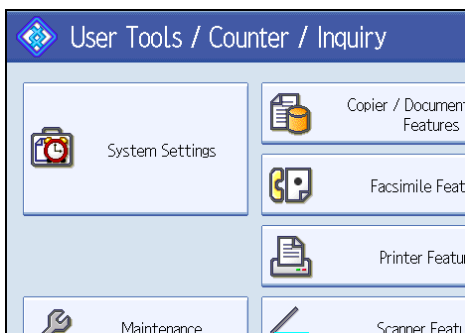
#### 📖 Reference

- p.229 "Deleting a Registered Name"

## Displaying the Counter for Each User

This section describes how to display the counter for each user.

1. Press [System Settings].



2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Display / Clear / Print Counter per User].

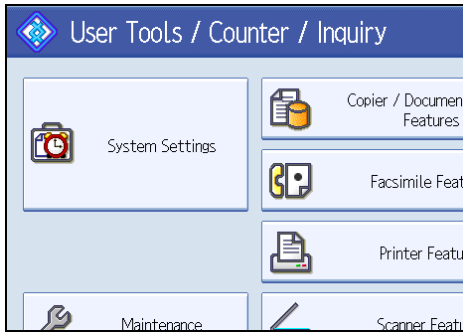
- 4. Select the function usage you want to print from [Copier Counter], [Print Counter], [Fax Counter] or [Scanner Counter].

Counters for individual function usage under each user code appear.

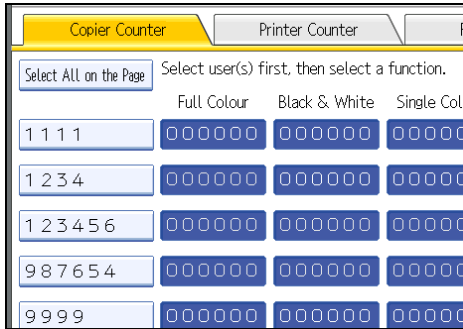
## Printing the Counter for Each User

This section describes how to print the counter for each user.

- 1. Press [System Settings].

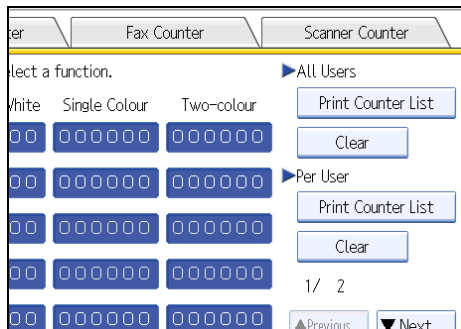


- 2. Press [Administrator Tools].
- 3. Press [Display / Clear / Print Counter per User].
- 4. Select a user code from the left side of the display.



Press [Select All on the Page] to select all user codes on the page.

**5. Press [Print Counter List] under "Per User".**



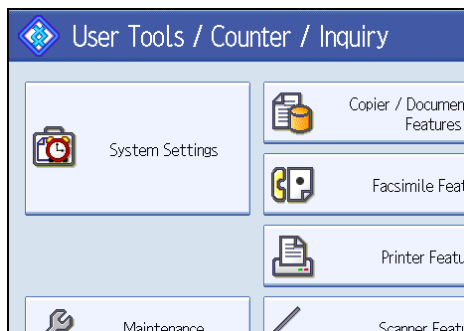
Enter the user code, and then press the [#] key if the user code is registered.

- 6. Select the function usage you want to print from [Copier Counter], [Print Counter], [Fax Prints], [Fax Transmission], [Scanner Counter], and [Total Prints].**
- 7. Press [Print].**

## Printing the Counter for All Users

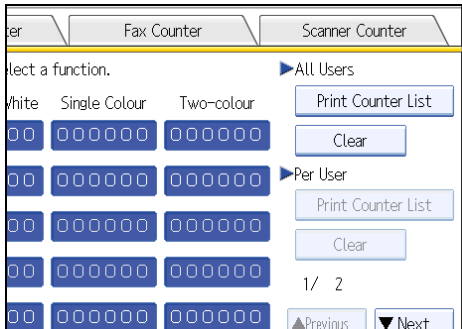
This section describes how to print the counter for all users.

**1. Press [System Settings].**



- 2. Press [Administrator Tools].**
- 3. Press [Display / Clear / Print Counter per User].**

**4. Press [Print Counter List] under "All Users".**



Enter the user code, and then press the [#] key if the user code is registered.

- 5. Select the function usage you want to print from [Copier Counter], [Print Counter], [Fax Prints], [Fax Transmission], [Scanner Counter], and [Total Prints].
- 6. Press [Print].

---

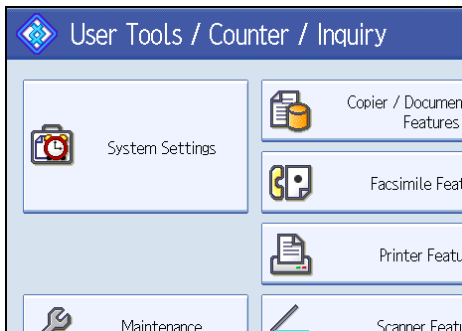
## Clearing the Number of Prints

---

This section describes how to clear the counter.

**7**

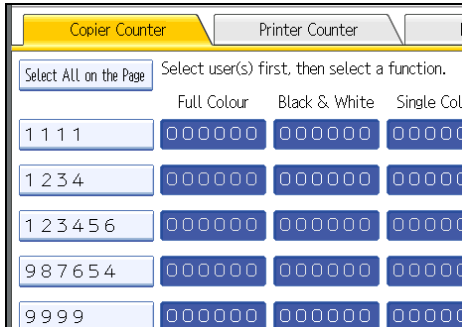
**1. Press [System Settings].**



- 2. Press [Administrator Tools].
- 3. Press [Display / Clear / Print Counter per User].
- 4. Select the user code to clear.



- To clear the number of prints made under a user code, select the user code from the left side of the display.



Press [Select All on the Page] to select all user codes on the page.

- Press [Clear] under "Per User".
- Select the function usage you want to clear from [Copier Counter], [Print Counter], [Fax Prints], [Fax Transmission], [Scanner Counter], and [Total Counter].
- Press [OK].
- To clear the number of prints for all user codes, press [Clear] under "All Users".
- Select the function usage you want to clear from [Copier Counter], [Print Counter], [Fax Prints], [Fax Transmission], [Scanner Counter], and [Total Counter].
- Press [OK].
- Press [Exit].
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

# Fax Destination

This section describes the procedure for registering, changing, and deleting Fax Destinations.

Register a fax destination so you do not need to enter fax numbers each time, and can send documents that have been scanned in using the facsimile function.

- It is easy to select the fax destination if you register "Name" and "Key Display" for the fax destination.
- You can register fax destinations as a group. For details about registering a group, see "Fax Destination".
- You can register fax destinations by selecting them from redial function.
- Registered Fax numbers can be used as sender's Fax numbers.

There are two types of fax destination, as shown below:

- **Fax Destination**  
Select this to send the fax over the telephone network.
- **IP-Fax**  
Select this to send the fax to a machine on a TCP/IP network.  
You cannot send the fax to a machine on another network if that network is behind a firewall.

You can program the following items in a fax destination:

## **Fax number**

Registers the destination's fax number. You can enter a fax number using up to 128 digits. You must include every digit in the number.

## **SUB Code**

Registering a SUB Code allows you to use Confidential Transmission to send messages to the other fax machines which support a similar function called "SUB Code". See "SUB Code", Facsimile Reference.

## **SEP Code**

Registering a SEP Code allows you to use Polling Reception to receive faxes from the other fax machines which support Polling Reception. See "SEP Code", Facsimile Reference.

## **Line**

If the optional extra G3 interface unit is installed, you can select the line type per destination.

## **International TX mode**

When setting the International TX mode to [On], the machine transmits more carefully by lowering transmission speed. However, communication times increase.

## **Fax header**

You can select to print a fax header on fax messages the other party receives.

The default is "1st Name".

## Label insertion

Use label insertion to print information such as the destination name on the sheet printed out at the destination.

Data is printed as follows:

- Destination Name

The destination name specified in [Fax Destination] is printed with "To" before it at the top of the sheet.

- Standard Message

A registered two-line sentence is printed under "Destination Name".

To use this function, set Label Insertion to [On] when programming fax destinations and also press [Label Insertion] when sending fax documents.

Fax header and label insertion are also printed when sending by e-mail using the fax function.

You can program a standard message other than those registered in the machine.

See "Programming, Changing, and Deleting Standard Messages", Facsimile Reference.

You can program the following items in an IP-Fax Destination:

### IP-Fax

Register the IP-Fax destination. You can register the name using up to 128 characters. You must make this setting when using IP-Fax.

This setting only works if the IP-Fax function has been selected.

### SUB Code

Registering a SUB Code allows you to use Confidential Transmission to send messages to the other fax machines which support a similar function called "SUB Code". See "SUB Code", Facsimile Reference.

### SEP Code

Registering a SEP Code allows you to use Polling Reception to receive faxes from the other fax machines which support Polling Reception. See "SEP Code", Facsimile Reference.

### Select Protocol

Select the protocol for the IP-Fax transmission.

This setting only works if the IP-Fax function has been selected.

### Reference

- p.242 "Fax Destination"
- p.278 "Registering Names to a Group"
- p.288 "Registering a Protection Code"

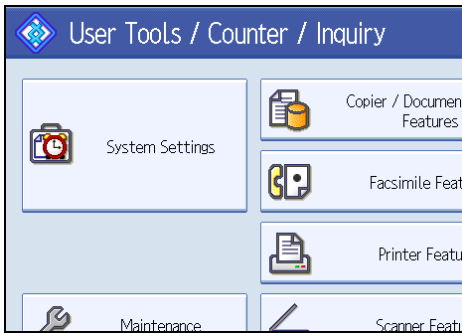
## Fax Destination

This section describes how to register, change, and delete a fax destination.

### Registering a Fax Destination

This section describes how to register a fax number.

1. Press [System Settings].



2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book Management].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Select the name whose fax destination you want to register.  
Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.
6. Press [Fax Dest.].
7. Press [Change] under "Fax Destination".
8. Enter the fax number using the number keys, and then press [OK].



9. Specify optional settings such as "SUB Code", "SEP Code", and "International TX Mode".
10. Press [OK].
11. Press [Exit].

## 12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

### ↓ Note

- When a group is registered, you can also add this fax destination to the group. For details about registering groups, see "Registering Names to a Group".
- To register the name, see "Registering Names".

### 📖 Reference

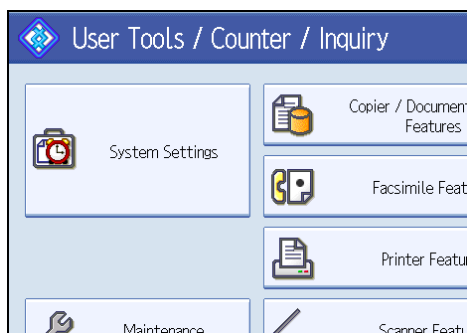
- p.227 "Registering Names"
- p.244 "Using a Fax Destination as a sender"
- p.244 "To change the line"
- p.245 "To program the SUB Code"
- p.245 "To program the SEP Code"
- p.245 "To set the International TX Mode"
- p.246 "To select the fax header"
- p.246 "To set label insertion"
- p.278 "Registering Names to a Group"

## Changing a Fax Destination

7

This section describes how to change a registered fax destination.

### 1. Press [System Settings].



### 2. Press [Administrator Tools].

### 3. Press [Address Book Management].

### 4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

### 5. Select the name whose fax destination you want to change.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

6. Press **[Fax Dest.]**.
7. Change the settings.
8. Press **[OK]**.
9. Press **[Exit]**.
10. Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

**Note**

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Changing a Registered Name".

**Reference**

- p.228 "Changing a Registered Name"
- p.244 "To change the fax number"
- p.244 "To change the line"
- p.245 "To program the SUB Code"
- p.245 "To program the SEP Code"
- p.245 "To set the International TX Mode"
- p.246 "To select the fax header"
- p.246 "To set label insertion"

7

### Using a Fax Destination as a sender

---

This section describes how to use fax destination as a sender.

1. Press **[Protection]**.
2. Press **[Sender]** on the right side of "Use Name as".

### To change the fax number

---

This section describes how to change the fax number.

1. Press **[Change]** under "Fax Destination".
2. Enter the new fax number using the number keys, and then press **[OK]**.

### To change the line

---

This section describes how to change the line.

### 1. Press [Select Line].

Names	Auth. Info	Protection	Fax Dest.
▶ Fax Destination	0312345678		
	Select Line	G3	
▶ International TX Mode	Off	Change	
▶ Fax Header	1st Name	Change Fax Head when ser	
▶ Label Insertion	On	Change	

### 2. Select the line, and then press [OK].

## To program the SUB Code

This section describes how to program the SUB Code.

1. Press [Adv. Features], and then press [SUB Code].
2. Press [Change] under "TX SUB Code".
3. Enter the new SUB Code, and then press [OK].
4. To change the password, press [Change] under "Password (SID)".
5. Enter the new password, and then press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

7

## To program the SEP Code

This section describes how to program the SEP Code.

1. Press [Adv. Features], and then press [SEP Code].
2. Press [Change] under "RX SEP Code".
3. Enter the new SEP Code, and then press [OK].
4. To change the password, press [Change] under "Password (PWD)".
5. Enter the new password, and then press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

## To set the International TX Mode

This section describes how to set the International TX Mode.

1. Press [Change] under "International TX Mode".

2. Select [Off] or [On], and then press [OK].

### To select the fax header

---

This section describes how to select the fax header.

You can register the fax header in Program Fax Information in the system settings for Facsimile Features.

1. Press [Change] under "Fax Header".
2. Select [1st Name] or [2nd Name], and then press [OK].

#### Reference

- p.154 "Registering Fax Information"

### To set label insertion

---

This section describes how to set label insertion.

When Label Insertion is set to ON, the receiver's name and standard messages are printed on the fax message when it is received at the other end.

1. Press [Change] under "Label Insertion".
2. Press [On].
3. Press [Change] under "Line 2".
4. Select the new standard message or press [Manual Entry] to enter the new message.
5. Enter the new message, and then press [OK].
6. Press [OK].
7. Press [Change] under "Line 3".
8. Select the new standard message, and then press [OK].
9. Press [OK].

#### Note

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Changing a Registered Name".

#### Reference

- p.228 "Changing a Registered Name"

### Deleting a Fax Destination

---

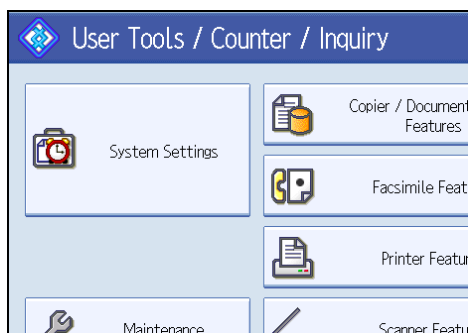
This section describes how to delete a registered fax destination.



### ★ Important

- If you delete a destination that is a specified delivery destination, messages to its registered Personal Box, for example, cannot be delivered. Be sure to check the settings in the fax function before deleting any destinations.

#### 1. Press [System Settings].



#### 2. Press [Administrator Tools].

#### 3. Press [Address Book Management].

#### 4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

#### 5. Select the name whose fax destination you want to delete.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

#### 6. Press [Fax Dest.].

#### 7. Press [Change] under "Facsimile Destination".

#### 8. Press [Delete All], and then press [OK].



#### 9. Press [OK].

#### 10. Press [Exit].

#### 11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

**Note**

- To delete the name, key display, and title, see "Deleting a Registered Name".

**Reference**

- p.229 "Deleting a Registered Name"

---

## IP-Fax Destination

---

This section describes how to register, change, and delete an IP-Fax destination.

**Note**

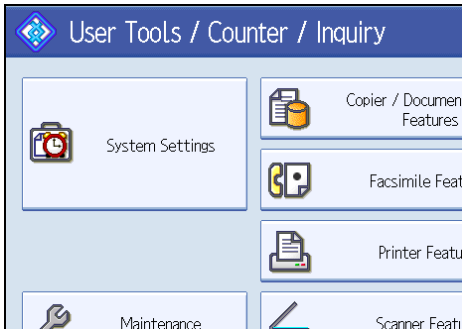
- For details about sending an IP-Fax, see "Sending by IP-Fax", Facsimile Reference.

### Registering an IP-Fax Destination

---

This section describes how to register an IP-Fax Destination.

1. Press [System Settings].



2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book Management].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Select the name whose IP-Fax destination you want to register.  
Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.
6. Press [Fax Dest.].

7. Press [Select Line], and then select [H.323] or [SIP].

Names	Auth. Info	Protection	Fax Dest.
▶ Fax Destination	0312345678		
	Select Line	G3	
▶ International TX Mode	Off	Change	
▶ Fax Header	1st Name	Change	Fax Head when ser
▶ Label Insertion	On	Change	

8. Press [Change] under "Fax Destination".

9. Enter the IP-Fax destination.

10. Press [OK].

11. Press [OK].

12. Press [Exit].

13. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

↓ Note

- To register the name, see "Registering Names".

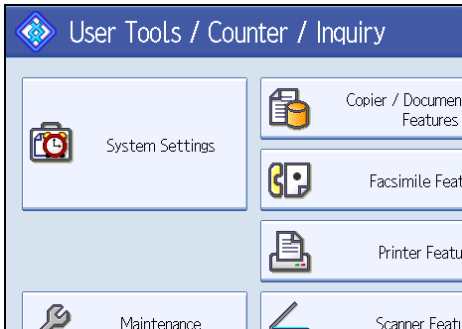
📖 Reference

- p.227 "Registering Names"
- p.231 "Registering a User Code"
- p.278 "Registering Names to a Group"
- p.251 "Using the IP-Fax Destination as the sender"
- p.251 "To change the IP-Fax Destination"
- p.251 "To change the protocol"
- p.251 "To program the SUB Code"
- p.252 "To program the SEP Code"
- p.252 "To set the International TX Mode"
- p.252 "To select the fax header"

## Changing a Registered IP-Fax Destination

This section describes how to change an IP-Fax Destination.

1. Press [System Settings].



2. Press [Administrator Tools].

3. Press [Address Book Management].

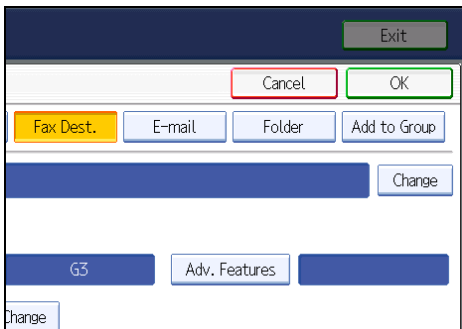
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

5. Select the name whose IP-Fax destination you want to change.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

6. Press [Fax Dest.].

7. Press [Change] under "Fax Destination".



8. Enter the new destination, and then press [OK].

9. Press [OK].

10. Press [Exit].

11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

**Note**

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Changing a Registered Name".

**Reference**

- p.228 "Changing a Registered Name"
- p.251 "Using the IP-Fax Destination as the sender"

- p.251 "To change the IP-Fax Destination"
- p.251 "To change the protocol"
- p.251 "To program the SUB Code"
- p.252 "To program the SEP Code"
- p.252 "To set the International TX Mode"
- p.252 "To select the fax header"

## Using the IP-Fax Destination as the sender

---

This section describes how to use the IP-Fax destination as the sender.

1. Press [Protection].
2. Press [Sender] under "Use Name as".

## To change the IP-Fax Destination

---

This section describes how to change a registered IP-Fax destination.

1. Press [Change] under "Use Name as".
2. Enter the new destination, and then press [OK].

7

## To change the protocol

---

This section describes how to select the protocol.

1. Press [Select Line].
2. Select [H.323] or [SIP].

## To program the SUB Code

---

This section describes how to program the SUB Code.

1. Press [Adv. Features], and then press [SUB Code].
2. Press [Change] under "TX SUB Code".
3. Enter the SUB Code, and then press [OK].
4. To enter a password, press [Change] under "Password (SID)".
5. Enter a password using the number keys, and then press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

### To program the SEP Code

---

This section describes how to program the SEP Code.

1. Press [Adv. Features], and then press [SEB Code].
2. Press [Change] under "RX SEP Code".
3. Enter a SEP Code using the number keys, and then press [OK].
4. To enter a password, press [Change] under "Password (PWD)".
5. Enter a password using the number keys, and then press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

### To set the International TX Mode

---

This section describes how to set the International TX Mode.

1. Press [Change] under "International TX Mode".
2. Select [Off] or [On], and then press [OK].

### To select the fax header

---

This section describes how to select the fax header.

1. Press [Change] under "Fax Header".
2. Select [1st Name] or [2nd Name], and then press [OK].

#### Reference

- p.154 "Registering Fax Information"

### To set label insertion

---

This section describes how to set label insertion.

When Label Insertion is set to ON, the receiver's name and standard messages are printed on the fax message when it is received at the other end.

1. Press [Change] under "Label Insertion".
2. Press [On].
3. Press [Change] under "Line 2".
4. Select the new standard message or press [Manual Entry] to enter the new message.
5. Enter the new message, and then press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

7. Press [Change] under "Line 3".
8. Select the new standard message, and then press [OK].
9. Press [OK].

#### ↓ Note

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Changing a Registered Name".

#### 📖 Reference

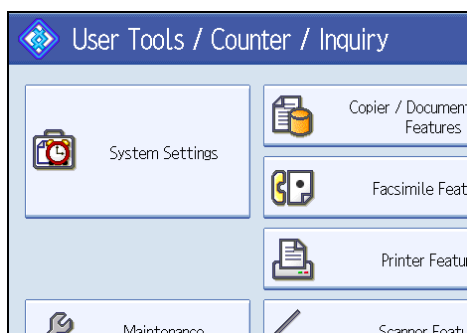
- p.228 "Changing a Registered Name"

## Deleting a Registered IP-Fax Destination

This section describes how to delete a registered IP-Fax destination.

If you delete a destination that is a specified delivery destination, messages to its registered Personal Box, for example, cannot be delivered. Be sure to check the settings in the fax function before deleting any destinations.

1. Press [System Settings].



2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book Management].
4. Press [Program / Change].
5. Select the name whose IP-Fax destination you want to delete.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

6. Press [Fax Dest.].
7. Press [Change] under "Fax Destination".
8. Press [Delete All], and then press [OK].
9. Press [OK].
10. Press [Exit].

**11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

**↓ Note**

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Changing a Registered Name".

**📖 Reference**

- p.228 "Changing a Registered Name"



# E-mail Destination

This section describes the procedure for registering, changing, and deleting E-mail Destination.

Register e-mail destinations so you do not need to enter an e-mail address every time, and can send scan files from scanner or fax function by e-mail.

- It is easy to select the e-mail destination if you register "Name" and "Key Display" as the e-mail destination.
- You can register e-mail destinations as a group.
- You can use the e-mail address as the sender's address when sending scan files in scanner mode. If you want to do this, set a protection code on the sender address to prevent unauthorized access.

## Note

- You can select an e-mail address from an LDAP server, and then register it in the Address Book. See "Sending Scan File by E-mail", Scanner Reference.
- You can set the machine to send a Transmission Result Report by e-mail whenever a transmission is sent. See Facsimile Reference.

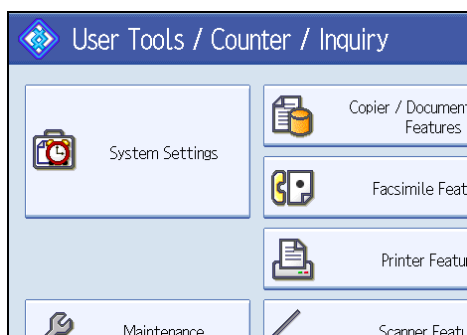
## Reference

- p.288 "Registering a Protection Code"

## Registering an E-mail Destination

This section describes how to register an e-mail destination.

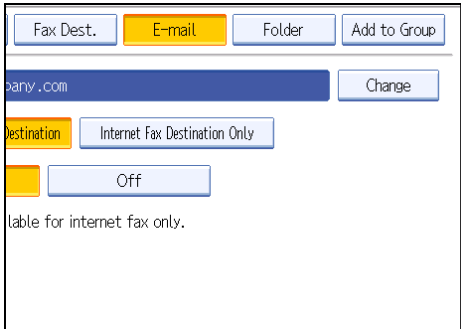
1. Press [System Settings].



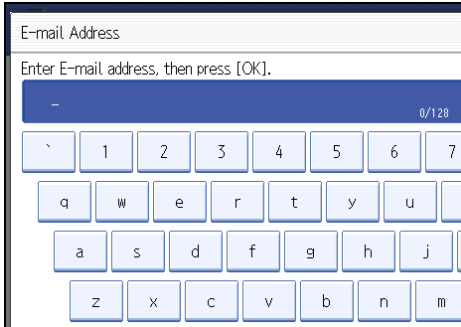
2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book Management].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Select the name whose e-mail address you want to register.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

6. Press [E-mail].
7. Press [Change].



8. Enter the e-mail address.



9. Press [OK].
10. Select [E-mail / Internet Fax Destination] or [Internet Fax Destination Only].

If [E-mail/Internet Fax Destination] is specified, registered e-mail addresses appear in both the internet fax address display and E-mail address display on the fax function screen, and in the address display on the scanner function screen.

If [Internet Fax Destination Only] is specified, registered e-mail addresses only appear in the internet fax display on the fax function screen.

11. If you want to use Internet fax, specify whether or not to use "Send via SMTP Server".
12. Press [OK].
13. Press [Exit].
14. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

**Note**

- You can enter up to 128 characters for the e-mail address.
- To register the name, see "Registering Names".

**Reference**

- p.227 "Registering Names"

- p.231 "Registering a User Code"
- p.278 "Registering Names to a Group"

## Changing an E-mail Destination

This section describes how to change an e-mail destination.

### 1. Press [System Settings].



### 2. Press [Administrator Tools].

### 3. Press [Address Book Management].

### 4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

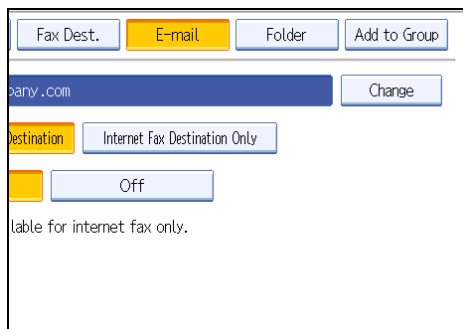
### 5. Select the name whose e-mail address you want to change.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

### 6. Press [E-mail].

### 7. Press [Change] under "E-mail Address".



### 8. Enter the e-mail address, and then press [OK].

### 9. Press [OK].

10. Press [Exit].

11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

**Note**

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Changing a Registered Name".

**Reference**

- p.228 "Changing a Registered Name"

---

## Using the e-mail address as the sender

---

This section describes how to use the e-mail address as a sender.

1. Press [Protection].
2. Press [Sender] under "Use Name as".

---

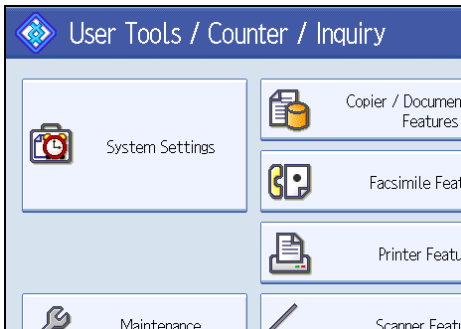
## Deleting an E-mail Destination

---

This section describes how to delete an e-mail destination.

7

1. Press [System Settings].



2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book Management].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Select the name whose e-mail address you want to delete.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys. You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

6. Press [E-mail].
7. Press [Change] under "E-mail Address".
8. Press [Delete All], and then press [OK].

9. Press [OK].

10. Press [Exit].

11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

 **Note**

- To delete the name, key display, and title, see "Deleting a Registered Name".

 **Reference**

- p.229 "Deleting a Registered Name"

# Registering Folders

This section describes the procedure for registering, changing, and deleting folders.

By registering a shared folder, you can send scan files or received fax documents to it directly.

There are three types of protocol you can use:

- SMB  
For sending files to shared Windows folders.
- FTP  
Use when sending files to an FTP server.
- NCP  
Use when sending files to a NetWare server.

### ↓ Note

- For details about protocols, server names, and folder levels, consult your network administrator.
- You can prevent unauthorized users from accessing folders from the machine. See "Registering a Protection Code".
- You can only select either SMB, FTP, or NCP. If you change protocol after finishing your settings, all previous entries are cleared.

### 📖 Reference

- p.288 "Registering a Protection Code"

7

---

## Using SMB to Connect

---

This section describes the procedure for registering, changing, and deleting SMB folders.

### ↓ Note

- To register a folder in an FTP server, see "Using FTP to Connect".
- To register a folder in an NetWare server, see "Using NCP to Connect".

### 📖 Reference

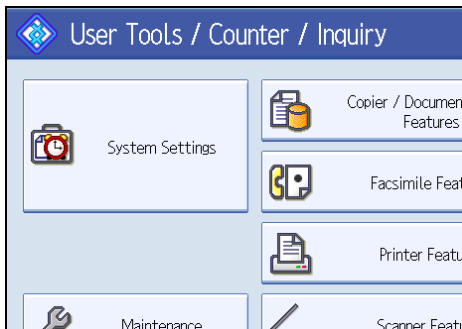
- p.266 "Using FTP to Connect"
- p.271 "Using NCP to Connect"

## Registering an SMB Folder

---

This section describes how to register an SMB folder.

1. Press [System Settings].



2. Press [Administrator Tools].

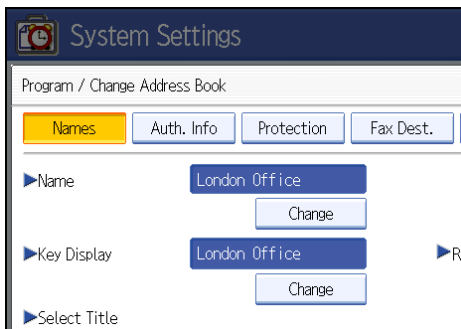
3. Press [Address Book Management].

4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

5. Select the name whose folder you want to register.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

6. Press [Auth. Info], and then press [▼Next].



7. Press [Specify Other Auth. Info] on the right side of Folder Authentication.

When [Do not Specify] is selected, the SMB User Name and SMB Password that you have specified in Default User Name / Password (Send) of File Transfer settings applies.

8. Press [Change] under "Login User Name".

9. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].

10. Press [Change] under "Login Password".

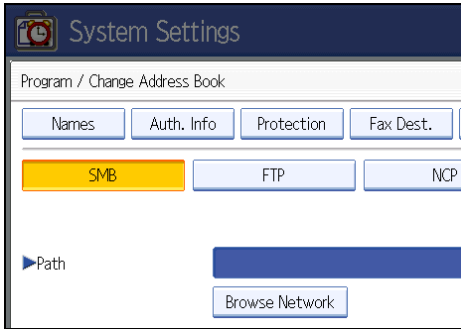
11. Enter the password, and then press [OK].

12. Enter the password again to confirm, and then press [OK].

13. Press [Folder].

14. Press [SMB].

To specify a folder, you can either enter the path manually or locate the folder by browsing the network.



**15. Specify the path.**

For details about how to specify the path manually, see "To locate the SMB folder manually".

For details about how to specify the path using Browse Network, see "To locate the SMB folder using Browse Network".

**16. Press [Connection Test] to check the path is set correctly.**

**17. Press [Exit].**

If the connection test fails, check the settings, and then try again.

**18. Press [OK].**

**19. Press [Exit].**

**20. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

**Note**

- To register the name, see "Registering Names".
- You can enter up to 64 characters for the user name.
- You can enter up to 64 characters for the password.
- You can enter a path using up to 128 characters.
- If User Authentication is specified, contact your administrator.

**Reference**

- p.227 "Registering Names"
- p.262 "To locate the SMB folder manually"
- p.263 "To locate the SMB folder using Browse Network"

**To locate the SMB folder manually**

This section describes how to locate the SMB folder manually.

- 1. Press [Change] under "Path".**
- 2. Enter the path where the folder is located.**



### 3. Press [OK].

If the format of the entered path is not correct, a message appears. Press [Exit], and then enter the path again.

#### ↓ Note

- Enter the path using this format: "\\ServerName\Share-Name\PathName".
- You can also enter an IPv4 address.
- You can enter a path using up to 128 characters.

## To locate the SMB folder using Browse Network

This section describes how to locate the SMB folder using Browse Network.

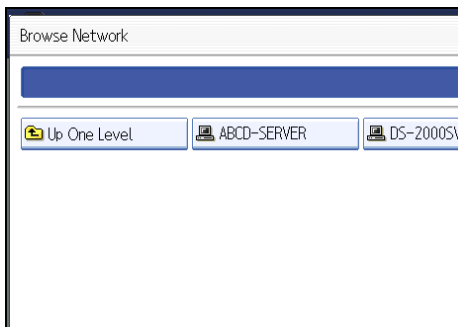
### 1. Press [Browse Network].

The client computers sharing the same network as the machine appear.

Network display only lists client computers you are authorized to access.

### 2. Select a client computer.

Shared folders under it appear.



You can press [Up One Level] to switch between levels.

### 3. Select the folder you want to register.

### 4. Press [OK].

## If a Login Screen Appears

This section describes how to log on to the machine if the login screen appears when you try to access a folder by browsing the network.

If you have not specified folder authentication, or if an incorrect user name or password has been entered for folder authentication, the login screen appears.

**1. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].**

Enter the login user name specified for folder authentication.

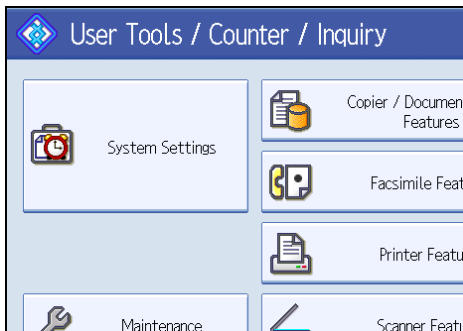
**2. Enter the password, and then press [OK].**

The path to the selected folder appears.

If a message appears, press [Exit], and then enter the login user name and password again.

## Changing an SMB Folder

This section describes how to change settings of the registered SMB folder.

**1. Press [System Settings].****2. Press [Administrator Tools].****3. Press [Address Book Management].****4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.****5. Select the name whose folder you want to change.**

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

**6. Press [Folder].****7. Select the items you want to change.**

When specifying a folder, enter the path directly or select it by referencing the network. For more information, see "To locate the folder manually" and "To locate the SMB folder using Browse Network".

**8. Press [Connection Test] to check the path is set correctly.****9. Press [Exit].****10. Press [OK].****11. Press [Exit].****12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

**Note**

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Changing a Registered Name".

**Reference**

- p.228 "Changing a Registered Name"
- p.262 "To locate the SMB folder manually"
- p.263 "To locate the SMB folder using Browse Network"

**To change the protocol**

This section describes how to change the protocol.

**1. Press [FTP] or [NCP].**

A confirmation message appears.

**2. Press [Yes].**

Changing the protocol will clear all settings made under the previous protocol.

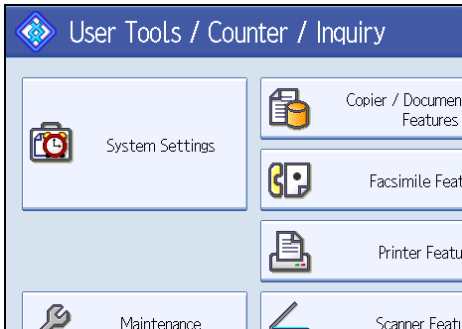
**3. Enter each item again.****Reference**

- p.266 "Using FTP to Connect"
- p.271 "Using NCP to Connect"

**Deleting an SMB registered folder**

This section describes how to delete the registered SMB folder.

**1. Press [System Settings].**



**2. Press [Administrator Tools].**

**3. Press [Address Book Management].**

**4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.**

**5. Select the name whose folder you want to delete.**

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

**6. Press [Folder].**

**7. Press the protocol which is not currently selected.**

A confirmation message appears.

**8. Press [Yes].**

**9. Press [OK].**

**10. Press [Exit].**

**11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

**Note**

- To delete the name, key display, and title, see "Deleting a Registered Name".

**Reference**

- p.229 "Deleting a Registered Name"

---

## Using FTP to Connect

---

This section describes the procedure for registering, changing, and deleting FTP folders.

**Note**

- To register a shared folder configured in Windows, see "Using SMB to Connect".
- To register a folder in a NetWare server, see "Using NCP to Connect".

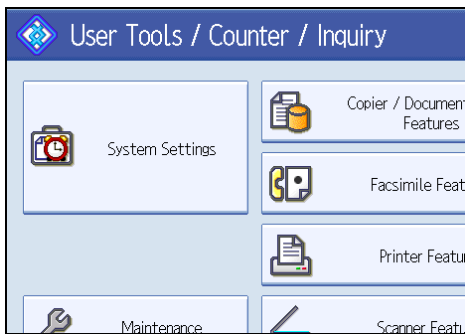
## Reference

- p.260 "Using SMB to Connect"
- p.271 "Using NCP to Connect"

## Registering an FTP Folder

This section describes how to register an FTP folder.

1. Press [System Settings].



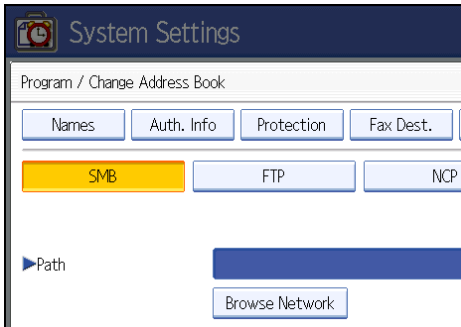
2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book Management].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Select the name whose folder you want to register.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

6. Press [Auth. Info], and then press [▼Next].
7. Press [Specify Other Auth. Info] on the right side of Folder Authentication.
 

When [Do not Specify] is selected, the FTP User Name and FTP Password that you have specified in Default User Name / Password (Send) of File Transfer settings applies. For details, see "File Transfer".
8. Press [Change] under "Login User Name".
9. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].
10. Press [Change] under "Login Password".
11. Enter the password, and then press [OK].
12. Enter the password again to confirm, and then press [OK].
13. Press [Folder].

**14. Press [FTP].**



**15. Press [Change] under "Server Name".**

**16. Enter the server name, and then press [OK].**

**17. Press [Change] under "Path".**

**18. Enter the path, and then press [OK].**

You can enter an absolute path, using this format: "/user/home/username"; or a relative path, using this format: "directory/sub-directory".

If you leave the path blank, the login directory is assumed to be the current working directory.

You can also enter an IPv4 address.

You can enter a path using up to 128 characters.

**19. To change the port number, press [Change] under "Port Number".**

**20. Enter the port number using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.**

You can enter 1 to 65535.

**21. Press [Connection Test] to check the path is set correctly.**

**22. Press [Exit].**

If the connection test fails, check the settings, and then try again.

**23. Press [OK].**

**24. Press [Exit].**

**25. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

**↓ Note**

- To register the name, see "Registering Names".
- You can enter up to 64 characters for the user name.
- You can enter up to 64 characters for the password.
- You can enter a server name using up to 64 characters.
- If User Authentication is specified, contact your administrator.

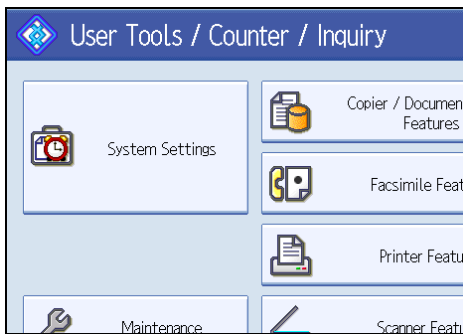
## Reference

- p.227 "Registering Names"
- p.62 "File Transfer"

## Changing an FTP Folder

This section describes how to change the registered FTP folder.

### 1. Press [System Settings].



### 2. Press [Administrator Tools].

### 3. Press [Address Book Management].

### 4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

### 5. Select the name whose folder you want to change.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

### 6. Press [Folder].

### 7. Select the items you want to change.

### 8. Press [Connection Test] to check the path is set correctly.

### 9. Press [Exit].

### 10. Press [OK].

### 11. Press [Exit].

### 12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## Note

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Changing a Registered Name".

## Reference

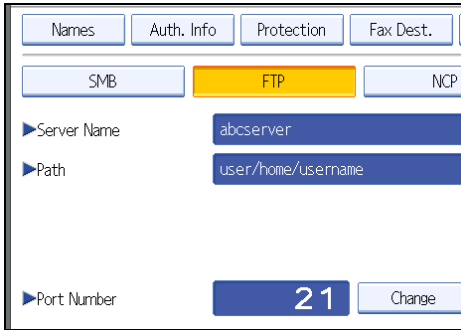
- p.228 "Changing a Registered Name"

## To change the protocol

---

This section describes how to change the protocol.

1. Press [SMB] or [NCP].



A confirmation message appears.

2. Press [Yes].

Changing the protocol will clear all settings made under the previous protocol.

3. Enter each item again.

### Reference

- p.260 "Using SMB to Connect"
- p.271 "Using NCP to Connect"

## Changing items under FTP

---

This section describes how to change the registered FTP folder.

1. Press [Change] under "Port Number".
2. Enter the new port number, and then press the [#] key.
3. Press [Change] under "Server Name".
4. Enter the new server name, and then press [OK].
5. Press [Change] under "Path".
6. Enter the new path, and then press [OK].

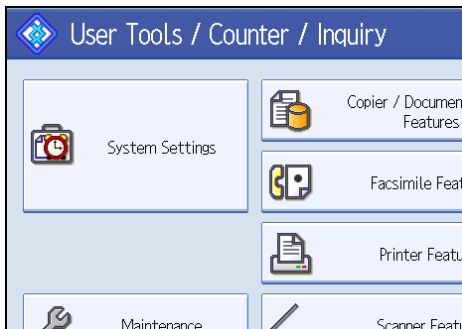
## Deleting an FTP Folder

---

This section describes how to delete the registered FTP folder.



**1. Press [System Settings].**



**2. Press [Administrator Tools].**

**3. Press [Address Book Management].**

**4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.**

**5. Select the name whose folder you want to delete.**

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

**6. Press [Folder].**

**7. Press the protocol which is not currently selected.**

A confirmation message appears.

**8. Press [Yes].**

**9. Press [OK].**

**10. Press [Exit].**

**11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

**Note**

- To delete a name entirely, see "Deleting a Registered Name".

**Reference**

- p.229 "Deleting a Registered Name"

## Using NCP to Connect

This section describes the procedure for registering, changing, and deleting NCP folders.

**Note**

- To register a shared folder configured in Windows, see "Using SMB to Connect".
- To register a folder in an FTP server, see "Using FTP to Connect".

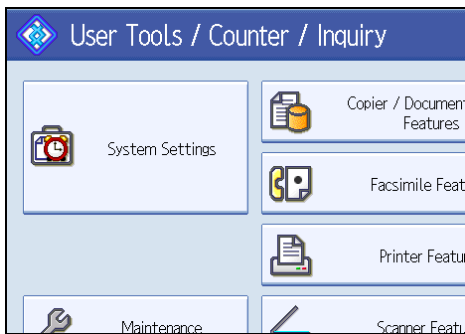
## Reference

- p.260 "Using SMB to Connect"
- p.266 "Using FTP to Connect"

## Registering an NCP Folder

This section describes how to register an NCP folder.

1. Press [System Settings].



2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book Management].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Press the name you want to register or enter the registered number using the number keys.  
You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.
6. Press [Auth. Info], and then press [▼Next].
7. Press [Specify Other Auth. Info] on the right side of Folder Authentication.  
When [Do not Specify] is selected, the NCP User Name and NCP Password that you have specified in Default User Name / Password (Send) of File Transfer settings applies. For details, see "File Transfer".
8. Press [Change] under "Login User Name".
9. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].
10. Press [Change] under "Login Password".
11. Enter the password, and then press [OK].
12. Enter the password again to confirm, and then press [OK].
13. Press [Folder].
14. Press [NCP].

### 15. Select "Connection Type".

If you want to specify a folder in an NDS tree, press [NDS]. If you want to specify a folder on a NetWare server, press [Bindery].

If you have set "Connection Type" to [NDS], enter the user name followed by the name of the context where the user object is located. If the user name is "user" and the context name is "context", enter "user.context".

### 16. Specify the path.

For details about how to specify the path manually, see "To locate the NCP folder manually".

For details about how to specify the path using Browse Network, see "To locate the NCP folder using Browse Network".

### 17. Press [Connection Test] to check the path is set correctly.

### 18. Press [Exit].

### 19. Press [OK].

### 20. Press [Exit].

### 21. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

#### ↓ Note

- To register the name, see "Registering Names".
- You can enter up to 64 characters for the user name.
- You can enter up to 64 characters for the password.
- To specify a folder, you can either enter the path manually or locate the folder by browsing the network.
- If User Authentication is specified, contact your administrator.

#### 📖 Reference

- p.62 "File Transfer"
- p.227 "Registering Names"
- p.273 "To locate the NCP folder manually"
- p.274 "To locate the NCP folder using Browse Network"

## To locate the NCP folder manually

---

This section describes how to locate the NCP folder manually.

1. Press [Change] under "Path".
2. Enter the path where the folder is located.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Connection Test] to check the path is set correctly.

**5. Press [Exit].**

**↓ Note**

- If you set "Connection Type" to [NDS], and if the NDS tree name is "tree", the name of the context including the volume is "context", the volume name is "volume" and the folder name is "folder", then the path will be "\\tree\volume.context\folder".
- If you set "Connection Type" to [Bindery], and if the NetWare server name is "server", the volume name is "volume" and the folder name is "folder", then the path will be "\\server\volume\folder".
- You can enter a path using up to 128 characters.
- If the connection test fails, check the settings, and then try again.

### To locate the NCP folder using Browse Network

---

This section describes how to locate the NCP folder using Browse Network.

- 1. Press [Browse Network].**
- 2. If you have set "Connection Type" to [NDS], a list of items in the NDS tree appears. If you have set "Connection Type" to [Bindery], a list of items on the NetWare server appears.**
- 3. Search for the destination folder in the NDS tree or NetWare server.**

You can press [Up One Level] to switch between levels.
- 4. Select the folder you want to register.**
- 5. Press [OK].**

**↓ Note**

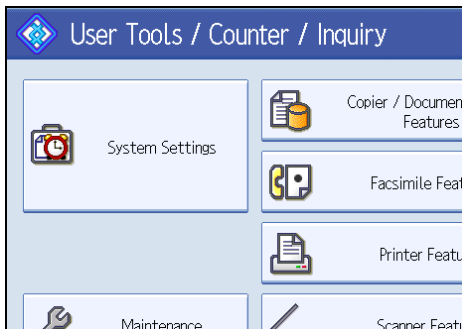
- Only the folders you are allowed to access appear in [Browse Network].
- If the languages used on the machine and the destination you want to view differ, the items in the list may not appear correctly.
- Up to 100 items can be displayed in the list.

### Changing an NCP registered folder

---

This section describes how to change the registered NCP folder.

**1. Press [System Settings].**



**2. Press [Administrator Tools].**

**3. Press [Address Book Management].**

**4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.**

**5. Select the user of the registered folder you want to change.**

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

**6. Press [Folder].**

**7. Select "Connection Type".**

If you want to specify a folder in an NDS tree, press [NDS]. If you want to specify a folder on a NetWare server, press [Bindery].

**8. Specify the folder.**

To specify a folder, you can either enter the path manually or locate the folder by browsing the network.

**9. Press [Connection Test] to check the path is set correctly.**

**10. Press [Exit].**

**11. Press [OK].**

**12. Press [Exit].**

**13. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

**↓ Note**

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Changing a Registered Name".

**📖 Reference**

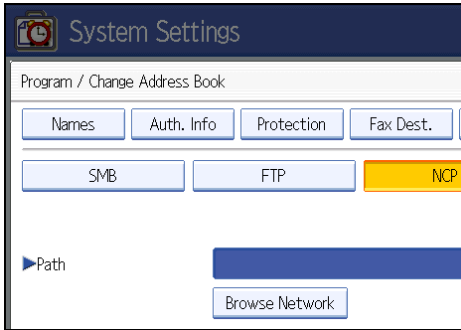
- p.228 "Changing a Registered Name"

## To change the protocol

---

This section describes how to change the protocol.

1. Press [SMB] or [FTP].



2. A confirmation message appears. Press [Yes].

Changing the protocol will clear all settings made under the previous protocol.

3. Enter each item again.

### Reference

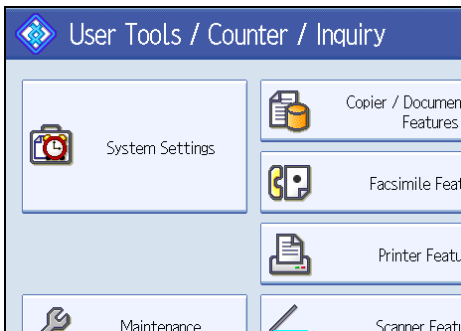
- p.260 "Using SMB to Connect"
- p.266 "Using FTP to Connect"

## Deleting an NCP Folder

---

This section describes how to delete the registered NCP folder.

1. Press [System Settings].



2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book Management].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

**5. Select a user of the folder you want to delete.**

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

**6. Press [Folder].****7. Press the protocol which is not currently selected.**

A confirmation message appears.

**8. Press [Yes].****9. Press [OK].****10. Press [Exit].****11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.****↓ Note**

- To delete a name entirely, see "Deleting a Registered Name".

**📖 Reference**

- p.229 "Deleting a Registered Name"

## Registering Names to a Group

This section describes how to register names to a group.

You can register names to a group to enable easy management of e-mail addresses and folders for each group.

To add names to a group, the groups must be registered beforehand.

### ★ Important

- When using Scan to Folder function, you cannot send scan files to a group with over 50 folders registered.
- The maximum number of destinations registerable to a group is 500.

### ↓ Note

- You can set a protection code to prevent unauthorized access to the folders registered in a group. For details, see "Registering a Protection Code".

### 📖 Reference

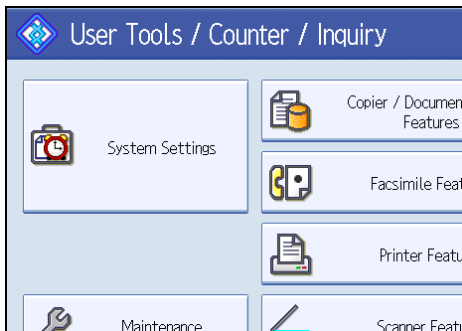
- p.288 "Registering a Protection Code"

## 7

### Registering a Group

This section describes how to register a group.

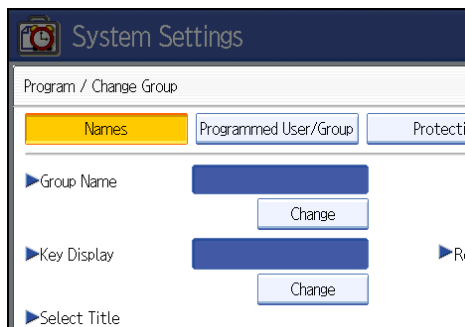
1. Press [System Settings].



2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Press [New Program].



**6. Press [Change] under "Group Name".**



**7. Enter the group name, and then press [OK].**

The Key Display name is set automatically.

**8. Press the title key under "Select Title", if necessary.**

The keys you can select are as follows:

- [Frequent]: Added to the page that is displayed first.
- [AB], [CD], [EF], [GH], [IJK], [LMN], [OPQ], [RST], [UVW], [XYZ], [1] to [10].

Added to the list of items in the selected title.

You can select [Frequent] and one more page for each title.

**9. When you want to change the key display, press [Change] under "Key Display".**

**10. Enter the key display, and then press [OK].**

**11. Press [OK].**

**12. Press [Exit].**

**13. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

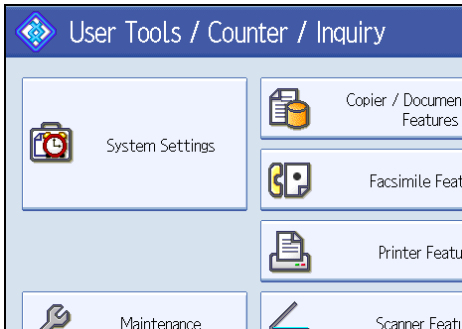
## Registering Names to a Group

This section describes how to register names to a registered group.

You can put names that have been registered in the Address Book into a group.

When registering new names, you can also register groups at the same time.

**1. Press [System Settings].**



**2. Press [Administrator Tools].**

**3. Press [Address Book Management].**

**4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.**

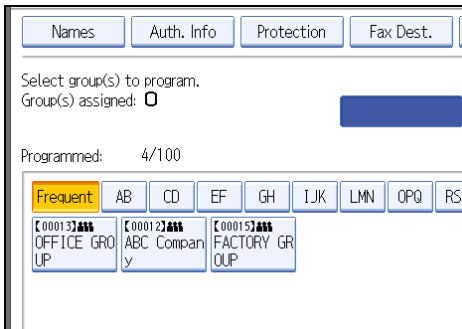
**5. Select the name to register in a group.**

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

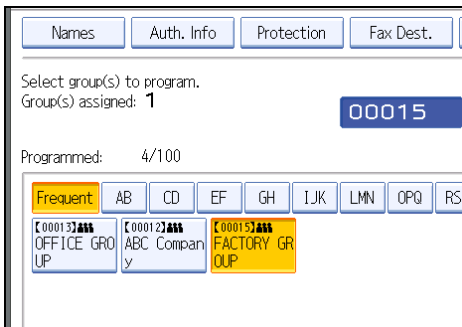
You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

**6. Press [Add to Group].**

**7. Select a group to which you want to add the name.**



The group key that you have selected becomes highlighted, and the name is added to it.

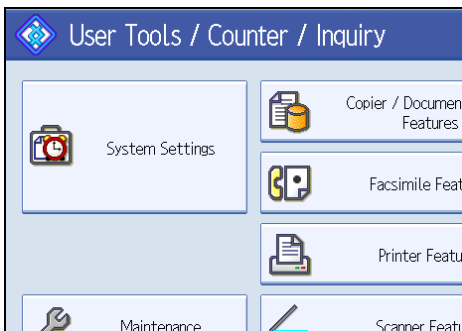


8. Press [OK].
9. Press [Exit].
10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## Adding a Group to Another Group

This section describes how to add a group to another group.

1. Press [System Settings].

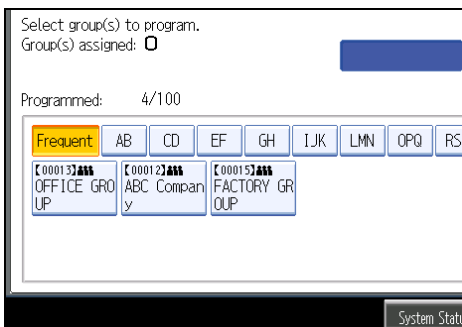


2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Select the group that you want to put into another group.

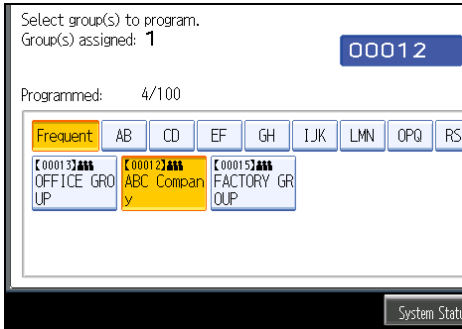
Press the group key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

6. Press [Add to Group].
7. Select the group to which you want to add.



The group key that you have selected becomes highlighted, and the group is added to it.



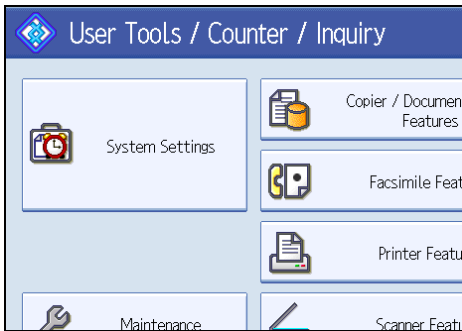
- 8. Press [OK].
- 9. Press [Exit].
- 10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## Displaying Names Registered in a Group

This section describes how to display names registered in a group.

You can check the names or groups registered in each group.

- 1. Press [System Settings].



- 2. Press [Administrator Tools].
- 3. Press [Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group].
- 4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
- 5. Select the group where the members you want to check is registered.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

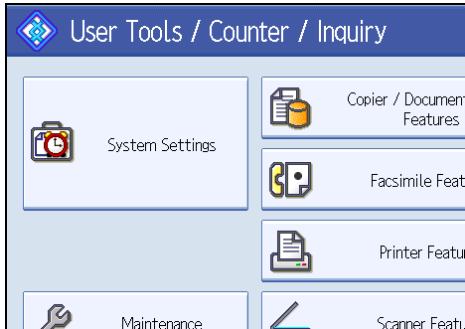
- 6. Press [Programmed User/Group].  
All the names registered will be displayed.
- 7. Press [OK].
- 8. Press [Exit].

9. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## Removing a Name from a Group

This section describes how to remove a name from a group.

1. Press [System Settings].

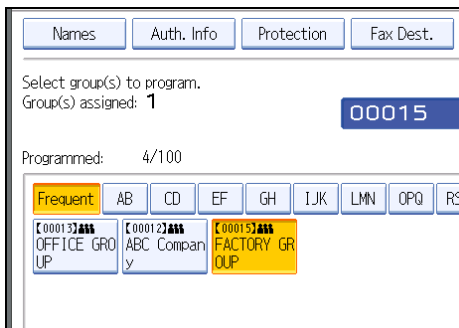


2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book Management].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Select the name to remove from a group.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

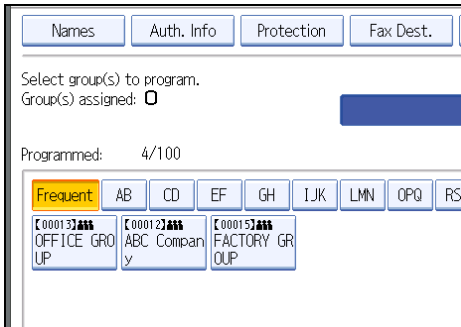
You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

6. Press [Add to Group].
7. Select the group from which you want to remove the name.



The group key is deselected and the name is removed from it.

**8. Press [OK].**



**9. Press [Exit].**

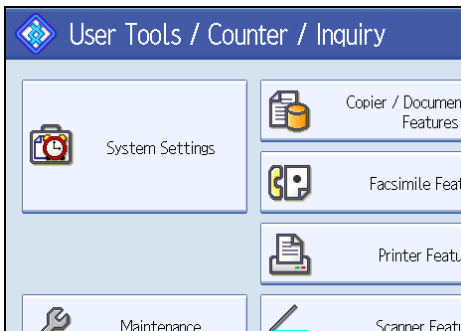
**10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

## Deleting a Group Within Another Group

This section describes how to delete a group within another group.

**1. Press [System Settings].**

7



**2. Press [Administrator Tools].**

**3. Press [Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group].**

**4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.**

**5. Select the group that you want to delete from.**

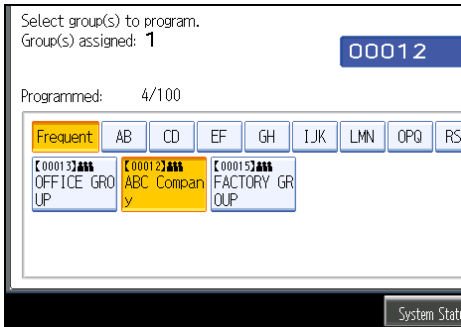
Press the group key, or enter the registered number during the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

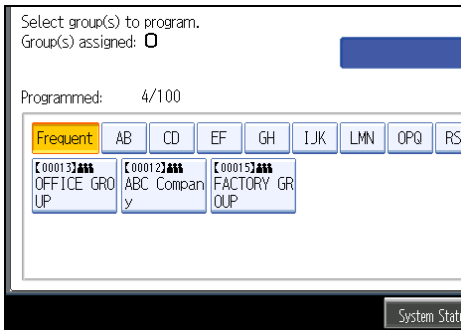
**6. Press [Add to Group].**

The keys of groups in which the group is registered appear highlighted.

## 7. Select the group that you want to delete from.



The group key is deselected and the group is deleted from it.

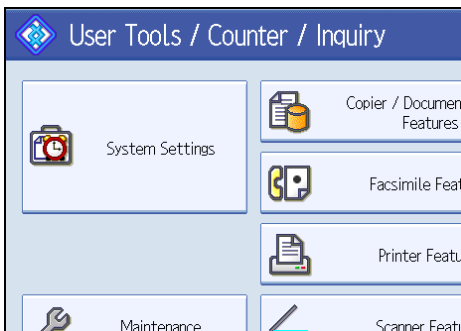


8. Press [OK].
9. Press [Exit].
10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

## Changing a Group Name

This section describes how to change a group name.

1. Press [System Settings].

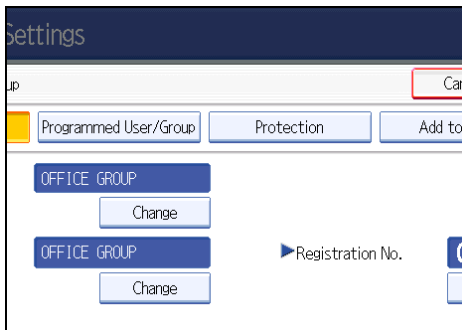


2. Press [Administrator Tools].

3. Press [Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Press the group key you want to change.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

6. To change the group name and key display, press [Change] under "Group Name" or "Key Display".



7. Enter the new group name or key display, and then press [OK].
8. To change the title, press the title key under "Select Title".
9. To change the registration number, press [Change] under "Registration No.".
10. Enter the new registration number using the number keys.
11. Press the [#] key.
12. Press [OK].
13. Press [Exit].
14. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

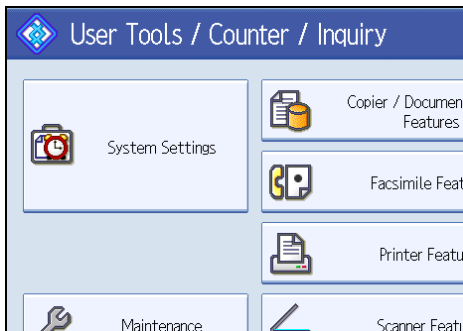
---

## Deleting a Group

---

This section describes how to delete a group.



**1. Press [System Settings].****2. Press [Administrator Tools].****3. Press [Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group].****4. Press [Delete].****5. Press a group key you want to delete.**

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

**6. Press [Yes].****7. Press [Exit].****8. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

# Registering a Protection Code

This section describes how to register a Protection Code.

You can stop sender's names or folders being accessed by setting a protection code.

You can use this function to protect the following:

- Folders  
You can prevent unauthorized access to folders.
- Sender's names  
You can prevent misuse of sender's names.

### Reference

- p.231 "Registering a User Code"

---

## Registering a Protection Code to a Single User

---

This section describes how to register a Protection code to a single user.

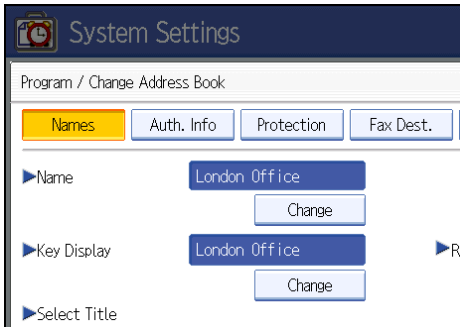
1. Press [System Settings].



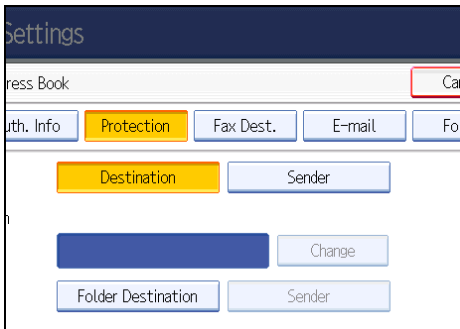
2. Press [Administrator Tools].
3. Press [Address Book Management].
4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
5. Select the name whose protection code you want to register.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

6. Press [Protection].



7. Press [Destination] or [Sender] under "Use Name as".



Both [Destination] and [Sender] can be selected at the same time.

8. Press [Change] under "Protection Code".

9. Enter a protection code using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.

10. Press [OK].

11. Press [Exit].

12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

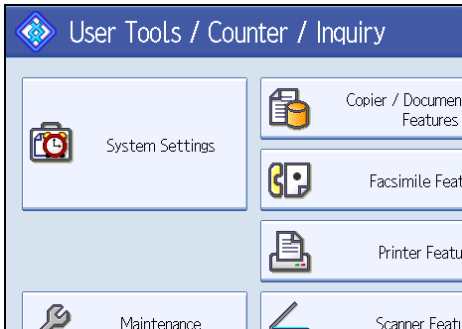
**Note**

- Specify a protection code of up to eight digits. You can also specify "Protection" without specifying a protection code.

## Registering a Protection Code to a Group User

This section describes how to register a Protection Code to a Group User.

**1. Press [System Settings].**



**2. Press [Administrator Tools].**

**3. Press [Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group].**

**4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.**

**5. Press the group key you want to register or enter the registered number using the number keys.**

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

**6. Press [Protection].**

**7. Press [Folder Destination] under "Protection Object".**

**8. Press [Change] under "Protection Code".**

**9. Enter a protection code using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.**

**10. Press [OK].**

**11. Press [Exit].**

**12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

**↓ Note**

- Specify a protection code of up to eight digits. You can also specify "Protection" without specifying a protection code.

# Registering SMTP and LDAP Authentication

This section describes how to register SMTP and LDAP Authentication.

## SMTP Authentication

This section describes how to register SMTP Authentication.

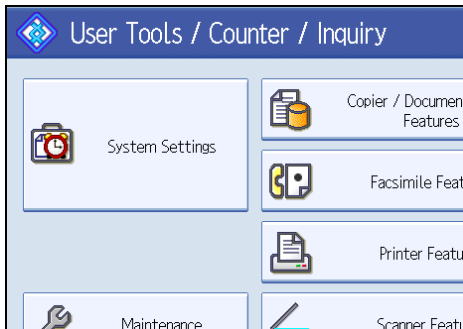
For each user registered in the Address Book, you can register a login user name and login password to be used when accessing an SMTP server.

To use an SMTP server, you need to program it beforehand.

### ★ Important

- When [Do not Specify] is selected for SMTP Authentication the User Name and Password that you have specified in SMTP Authentication of File Transfer settings applies. For details, see "File Transfer".

#### 1. Press [System Settings].



#### 2. Press [Administrator Tools].

#### 3. Press [Address Book Management].

#### 4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

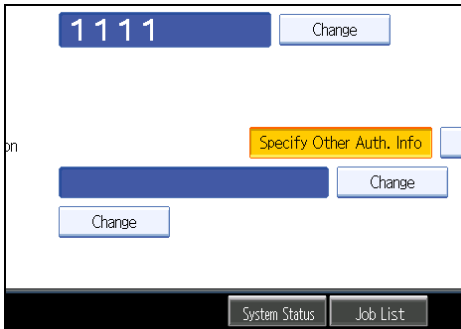
#### 5. Press the name you want to register or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

#### 6. Press [Auth. Info].

#### 7. Press [Specify Other Auth. Info] under "SMTP Authentication".

**8. Press [Change] under "Login User Name".**



9. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].
10. Press [Change] under "Login Password".
11. Enter the password, and then press [OK].
12. Enter the password again to confirm, and then press [OK].
13. Press [OK].
14. Press [Exit].
15. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

**Note**

- To register the name, see "Registering Names".
- You can enter up to 191 characters for the user name.
- When using POP before SMTP Authentication, you can enter up to 63 characters.
- You can enter up to 64 characters for the password.
- To change the SMTP Authentication settings, repeat step 2 to 15.

**Reference**

- p.227 "Registering Names"
- p.62 "File Transfer"

---

## LDAP Authentication

---

This section describes how to register LDAP Authentication.

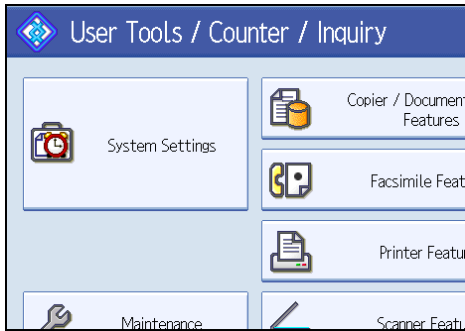
For each user registered in the Address Book, you can register a login user name and login password to be used when accessing an LDAP server.

To use an LDAP server, you need to program it beforehand. For details, see "Programming the LDAP server".

### ★ Important

- When [Do not Specify] is selected for LDAP Authentication, the User Name and Password that you have specified in Program / Change LDAP Server of Administrator Tools settings applies. For details, see "Programming the LDAP server".

#### 1. Press [System Settings].



#### 2. Press [Administrator Tools].

#### 3. Press [Address Book Management].

#### 4. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

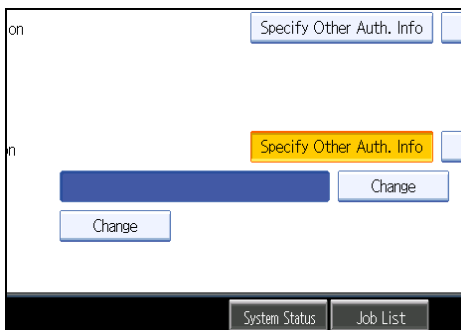
#### 5. Press the name you want to register or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

#### 6. Press [Auth. Info], and then press [▼Next].

#### 7. Press [Specify Other Auth. Info] under "LDAP Authentication".

#### 8. Press [Change] under "Login User Name".



#### 9. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].

#### 10. Press [Change] under "Login Password".

#### 11. Enter the password, and then press [OK].

#### 12. Enter the password again to confirm, and then press [OK].

13. Press [OK].

14. Press [Exit].

15. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

 **Note**

- To register the name, see "Registering Name".
- You can enter up to 128 characters for the user name.
- To change the LDAP Authentication settings, repeat step 2 to 15.

 **Reference**

- p.227 "Registering Names"
- p.77 "Programming the LDAP server"



# 8. Other User Tools

Initial settings allow you to switch the language as well as checking the number of printed papers by displaying the counter. For details on how to access respective settings, see "Accessing User Tools".

## Maintenance

This section describes the user tools in Maintenance.

[Maintenance] allows color drift and gradient correction.

### Auto Color Calibration

If a certain color is strong or the color of the copy differs from the original, adjust the yellow, magenta, cyan and black balance.

### Color Registration

If the color documents show registration shifting, perform automatic color registration.

#### Note

- For details about "Auto Color Calibration" and "Color Registration", see "Maintenance", Troubleshooting.

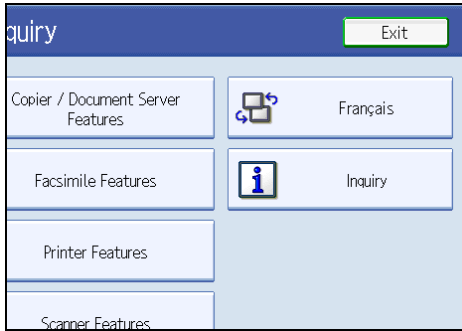
#### Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

# Changing the Display Language

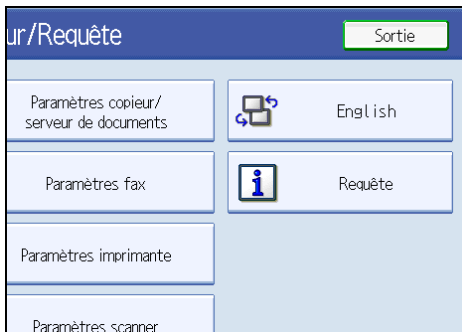
You can change the language used on the display. English is set as default.

**1. Press [Français].**



The language is changed to French.

**2. Press [Sortie].**



The menu appears in French.

**Reference**

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

# Inquiry

The inquiry function lets you check the telephone numbers to contact for repairs, or ordering consumables such as toner. Be sure to contact your service engineer to verify the following:

## Consumables

- Telephone No. to order
- Toner
- Staple
- Staple (Center)
- TX Stamp Name

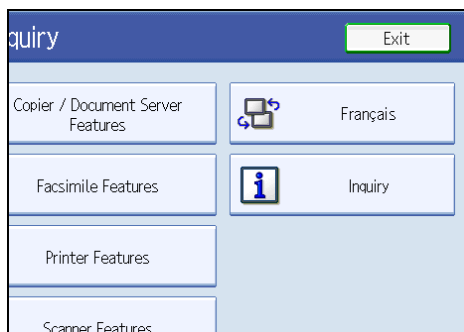
## Machine Maintenance/Repair

- Telephone No.
- Serial No. of Machine

## Sales Representative

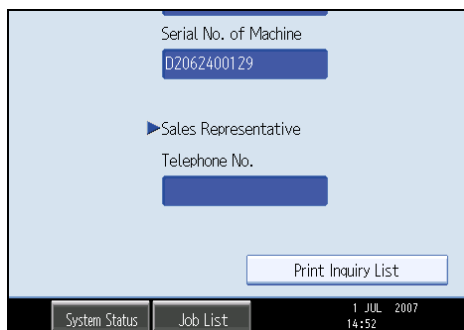
- Telephone No.

### 1. Press [Inquiry].



Inquiry information appears.

### 2. Press [Print Inquiry List].



**3. Press the [Start] key.**

Inquiry information prints out.

**4. Press [Exit] twice.**

**Reference**

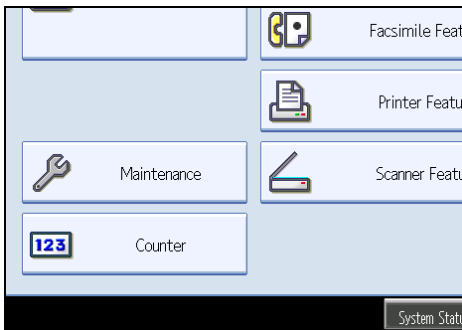
- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"

# Counter

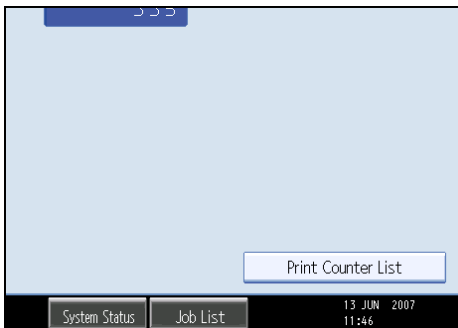
## Displaying the Total Counter

You can display the total counter value used for all functions.

1. Press [Counter].



2. To print a counter list, press [Print Counter List].



3. Press the [Start] key.

A counter list prints out.

### Reference

- p.12 "Accessing User Tools"



# 9. Appendix

---

## Copyrights

---

### expat

---

- The software including controller, etc. (hereinafter "software") installed on this product uses the expat under the conditions mentioned below.
- The product manufacturer provides warranty and support to the software of the product including the expat, and the product manufacturer makes the initial developer and copyright holder of the expat, free from these obligations.
- Information relating to the expat is available at:  
<http://expat.sourceforge.net/>

Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Centre, Ltd. and Clark Cooper.

Copyright (c) 2001, 2002 Expat maintainers.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

---

### NetBSD

---

#### 1. Copyright Notice of NetBSD

For all users to use this product:

This product contains NetBSD operating system:

For the most part, the software constituting the NetBSD operating system is not in the public domain; its authors retain their copyright.

The following text shows the copyright notice used for many of the NetBSD source code. For exact copyright notice applicable for each of the files/binaries, the source code tree must be consulted.

A full source code can be found at <http://www.netbsd.org/>.

Copyright (c) 1999, 2000 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:

This product includes software developed by The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.

4. Neither the name of The NetBSD Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE NETBSD FOUNDATION, INC. AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## 2. Authors Name List

All product names mentioned herein are trademarks of their respective owners.

The following notices are required to satisfy the license terms of the software that we have mentioned in this document:

- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan R. Stone for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Manuel Bouyer.
- This product includes software developed by Charles Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Charles M. Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Christopher G. Demetriou.
- This product includes software developed by Tools GmbH.



- This product includes software developed by Terrence R. Lambert.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Glass and Charles Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Theo de Raadt.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone and Jason R. Thorpe for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Christos Zoulas.
- This product includes software developed by Christopher G. Demetriou for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Paul Kranenburg.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Glass.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Winning Strategies, Inc.
- This product includes software developed by Frank van der Linden for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Frank van der Linden.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Jason R. Thorpe.
- The software was developed by the University of California, Berkeley.
- This product includes software developed by Chris Provenzano, the University of California, Berkeley, and contributors.

---

## Sablotron

---

9

Sablotron (Version 0.82) Copyright (c) 2000 Ginger Alliance Ltd. All Rights Reserved.

a) The application software installed on this product includes the Sablotron software Version 0.82 (hereinafter, "Sablotron 0.82"), with modifications made by the product manufacturer. The original code of the Sablotron 0.82 is provided by Ginger Alliance Ltd., the initial developer, and the modified code of the Sablotron 0.82 has been derived from such original code provided by Ginger Alliance Ltd.

b) The product manufacturer provides warranty and support to the application software of this product including the Sablotron 0.82 as modified, and the product manufacturer makes Ginger Alliance Ltd., the initial developer of the Sablotron 0.82, free from these obligations.

c) The Sablotron 0.82 and the modifications thereof are made available under the terms of Mozilla Public License Version 1.1 (hereinafter, "MPL 1.1"), and the application software of this product constitutes the "Larger Work" as defined in MPL 1.1. The application software of this product except for the Sablotron 0.82 as modified is licensed by the product manufacturer under separate agreement (s).

d) The source code of the modified code of the Sablotron 0.82 is available at: <http://support-download.com/services/device/sablot/notice082.html>

e) The source code of the Sablotron software is available at: <http://www.gingerall.com>

f) MPL 1.1 is available at: <http://www.mozilla.org/MPL/MPL-1.1.html>

---

## JPEG LIBRARY

---

- The software installed on this product is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

---

## SASL

---

CMU libsasl

Tim Martin

Rob Earhart

Rob Siemborski

Copyright (c) 2001 Carnegie Mellon University. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. The name "Carnegie Mellon University" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission.

For permission or any other legal details, please contact:

Office of Technology Transfer

Carnegie Mellon University

5000 Forbes Avenue

Pittsburgh, PA 15213-3890

(412) 268-4387, fax: (412) 268-7395

[tech-transfer@andrew.cmu.edu](mailto:tech-transfer@andrew.cmu.edu)

4. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment: "This product includes software developed by Computing Services at Carnegie Mellon University (<http://www.cmu.edu/computing/>)."

CARNEGIE MELLON UNIVERSITY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS, IN NO EVENT SHALL

---

CARNEGIE MELLON UNIVERSITY BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

---

## MD4

---

Copyright (c) 1990-2, RSA Data Security, Inc. All rights reserved.

License to copy and use this software is granted provided that it is identified as the "RSA Data Security, Inc. MD4 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing this software or this function.

License is also granted to make and use derivative works provided that such works are identified as "derived from the RSA Data Security, Inc. MD4 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing the derived work.

RSA Data Security, Inc. makes no representations concerning either the merchantability of this software or the suitability of this software for any particular purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty of any kind.

These notices must be retained in any copies of any part of this documentation and/or software.

---

## MD5

---

Copyright (c) 1991-2, RSA Data Security, Inc. Created 1991. All rights reserved.

License to copy and use this software is granted provided that it is identified as the "RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing this software or this function.

License is also granted to make and use derivative works provided that such works are identified as "derived from the RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing the derived work.

RSA Data Security, Inc. makes no representations concerning either the merchantability of this software or the suitability of this software for any particular purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty of any kind.

These notices must be retained in any copies of any part of this documentation and/or software.

---

## Samba (Ver 3.0.4)

---

For SMB transmission, this machine uses Samba ver 3.0.4 (hereinafter referred to as Samba 3.0.4).

Copyright (c) Andrew Tridgell 1994-1998.

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 675 Mass Ave, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA.

**Note**

- The source code for SMB transmission by this machine can be downloaded from the following website:
- <http://support-download.com/services/scbs>

---

## RSA BSAFE®

---



- This product includes RSA BSAFE(c) cryptographic or security protocol software from RSA Security Inc.
- RSA and BSAFE are registered trademarks of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.
- RSA Security Inc. All rights reserved.

---

## Open SSL

---

Copyright (c) 1998-2004 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:

"This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (<http://www.openssl.org/>)"

4. The names "OpenSSL Toolkit" and "OpenSSL Project" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact [openssl-core@openssl.org](mailto:openssl-core@openssl.org).

5. Products derived from this software may not be called "OpenSSL" nor may "OpenSSL" appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.

6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment:

"This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (<http://www.openssl.org/>)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young ([eyay@cryptsoft.com](mailto:eyay@cryptsoft.com)). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson ([tjh@cryptsoft.com](mailto:tjh@cryptsoft.com)).

Original SSLeay License

Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young ([eyay@cryptsoft.com](mailto:eyay@cryptsoft.com)) All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young ([eyay@cryptsoft.com](mailto:eyay@cryptsoft.com)). The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscape SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are adhered to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson ([tjh@cryptsoft.com](mailto:tjh@cryptsoft.com)).

Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed. If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used. This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: "This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)" The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the routines from the library being used are not cryptographic related :-).

4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement: "This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence.

[including the GNU Public Licence.]

---

## Open SSH

---

### 9

The licences which components of this software fall under are as follows. First, we will summarize and say that all components are under a BSD licence, or a licence more free than that.

OpenSSH contains no GPL code.

1)

Copyright (c) 1995 Tatu Ylonen <ylo@cs.hut.fi>, Espoo, Finland All rights reserved

As far as I am concerned, the code I have written for this software can be used freely for any purpose. Any derived versions of this software must be clearly marked as such, and if the derived work is incompatible with the protocol description in the RFC file, it must be called by a name other than "ssh" or "Secure Shell".

[Tatu continues]

However, I am not implying to give any licenses to any patents or copyrights held by third parties, and the software includes parts that are not under my direct control. As far as I know, all included source code is used in accordance with the relevant license agreements and can be used freely for any purpose (the GNU license being the most restrictive); see below for details.

[However, none of that term is relevant at this point in time. All of these restrictively licenced software components which he talks about have been removed from OpenSSH, i.e.,

- RSA is no longer included, found in the OpenSSL library
- IDEA is no longer included, its use is deprecated
- DES is now external, in the OpenSSL library
- GMP is no longer used, and instead we call BN code from OpenSSL
- Zlib is now external, in a library
- The make-ssh-known-hosts script is no longer included
- TSS has been removed
- MD5 is now external, in the OpenSSL library
- RC4 support has been replaced with ARC4 support from OpenSSL
- Blowfish is now external, in the OpenSSL library

[The licence continues]

Note that any information and cryptographic algorithms used in this software are publicly available on the Internet and at any major bookstore, scientific library, and patent office worldwide. More information can be found e.g. at "<http://www.cs.hut.fi/crypto>".

The legal status of this program is some combination of all these permissions and restrictions. Use only at your own responsibility. You will be responsible for any legal consequences yourself; I am not making any claims whether possessing or using this is legal or not in your country, and I am not taking any responsibility on your behalf.

NO WARRANTY

BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

2)

The 32-bit CRC compensation attack detector in deattack.c was contributed by CORE SDI S.A. under a BSD-style license.

Cryptographic attack detector for ssh - source code

Copyright (c) 1998 CORE SDI S.A., Buenos Aires, Argentina. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that this copyright notice is retained.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL CORE SDI S.A. BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM THE USE OR MISUSE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Ariel Futoransky <futo@core-sdi.com>

<<http://www.core-sdi.com>>

3)

One component of the ssh source code is under a 3-clause BSD license, held by the University of California, since we pulled these parts from original Berkeley code.

Copyright (c) 1983, 1990, 1992, 1993, 1995

The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

4)

Remaining components of the software are provided under a standard 2-term BSD licence with the following names as copyright holders:



Markus Friedl  
 Theo de Raadt  
 Niels Provos  
 Dug Song  
 Kevin Steves  
 Daniel Kouril  
 Wesley Griffin  
 Per Allansson  
 Jason Downs  
 Solar Designer  
 Todd C. Miller

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

5)

Portable OpenSSH contains the following additional licenses:

c) Compatibility code (openbsd-compat)

Apart from the previously mentioned licenses, various pieces of code in the openbsd-compat/ subdirectory are licensed as follows:

Some code is licensed under a 3-term BSD license, to the following copyright holders:

Todd C. Miller  
 Theo de Raadt  
 Damien Miller  
 Eric P. Allman

The Regents of the University of California

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---

## Open LDAP

---

The OpenLDAP Public License Version 2.8, 17 August 2003.

Redistribution and use of this software and associated documentation ("Software"), with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions in source form must retain copyright statements and notices,
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce applicable copyright statements and notices, this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution, and
3. Redistributions must contain a verbatim copy of this document.

The OpenLDAP Foundation may revise this license from time to time. Each revision is distinguished by a version number. You may use this Software under terms of this license revision or under the terms of any subsequent revision of the license.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OPENLDAP FOUNDATION AND ITS CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OPENLDAP FOUNDATION, ITS CONTRIBUTORS, OR THE AUTHOR(S) OR OWNER(S) OF THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT

---

OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The names of the authors and copyright holders must not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealing in this Software without specific, written prior permission. Title to copyright in this Software shall at all times remain with copyright holders.

OpenLDAP is a registered trademark of the OpenLDAP Foundation.

Copyright (c) 1999-2003 The OpenLDAP Foundation, Redwood City, California, USA. All Rights Reserved. Permission to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this document is granted.

---

## Heimdal

---

Copyright (c) 1997-2005 Kungliga Tekniska Högskolan (Royal Institute of Technology, Stockholm, Sweden). All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the Institute nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE INSTITUTE AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE INSTITUTE OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---

## IPS™ print language emulations

---

Copyright (c) 1987-2006 Zoran Corporation. All rights reserved.



# INDEX

---

1 Sided 2 Sided Auto Margin TtoB.....	100
1 Sided 2 Sided Auto Margin TtoT.....	100
2 Sided Print.....	137
4 Color Graphic Mode.....	204

## A

---

A.C.S. Priority.....	117
A.C.S. Sensitivity.....	117
A.C.S. Sensitivity Level.....	217
Accessing User Tools.....	12
Adding a Group to Another Group.....	281
Address Book.....	221
Address Book Change Order.....	69
Address Book Edit Title.....	71
Address Book Management.....	68
Address Book Program / Change / Delete Group .....	69
Address Book Switch Title.....	72
ADF Original Table Elevation.....	41
Adjust Color Image.....	117
Adjust Sound Volume.....	130
Administrator Authentication Management.....	74
Administrator Tools.....	68
Administrator's E-mail Address.....	64
Alert Sound Original left on Exposure Glass.....	95
AOF (Always On).....	75
Append CR to LF.....	211
Authentication Information.....	231
Authorized Reception.....	174, 178
Auto Color Calibration.....	295
Auto Continue.....	205
Auto Delete File in Document Server.....	74
Auto Delete Stored Print Jobs.....	205
Auto Delete Temporary Print Jobs.....	205
Auto Erase Memory Setting.....	75
Auto Image Density Priority.....	93
Auto Logout Timer.....	55
Auto Off Timer.....	54
Auto Specify Sender Name.....	66
Auto Tray Switching.....	94

## B

---

Back Cover Sheet Tray.....	50
Back Margin Left / Right.....	100
Back Margin Top/Bottom.....	100
Back Up / Restore Address Book.....	72
Background Density of ADS (Full Color).....	117, 218
Background Numbering.....	106
Backup File TX Setting.....	134
Blank Page Print.....	206
Box Setting.....	130
Box Setting Print List.....	131
Box Settings.....	186
Bypass Tray Setting Priority.....	207

## C

---

Center Mark.....	137
Change PDF Password.....	213
Changing a Fax Destination.....	243
Changing a Group Name.....	285
Changing a Registered Name.....	228
Changing a User Code.....	233
Changing an E-mail Destination.....	257
Changing Fax Information.....	156
Changing the Display Language.....	296
Changing the User Parameters.....	171
Checkered Mark.....	137
Clearing the Number of Prints.....	238
Color Profile.....	212, 213
Color Registration.....	295
Color Sensitivity.....	117
Color Setting.....	212, 213
Communication Page Count.....	130
Compression (Black & White).....	219
Compression (Gray Scale / Full Color).....	219
Configuration Page.....	201
Connect Copy Key Display.....	95
Connecting the Telephone Line.....	37
Connecting to the Ethernet Interface.....	15
Connecting to the Interfaces.....	15
Copier/Document Server Auto Reset Timer.....	54
Copies.....	206
Copy Back Cover.....	105

Copy Count Display.....	40	Displaying the Counter for Each User.....	235
Copy Eject Face Method in Bypass Mode.....	114	Displaying the Total Counter.....	299
Copy Eject Face Method in Glass Mode.....	114	Divide & Send E-mail.....	219
Copy on Designating Page in Combine.....	102	DNS Configuration.....	58
Copy Order in Combine.....	101	Domain Name.....	58
Copy Orientation in Duplex Mode.....	94	Double Copies Separation Line.....	103
Copyrights.....	301	Double Feed Detect.....	52
Counter.....	299	Duplex.....	206
Courier Font.....	211	Duplex Back Page Stamping Position (Page Numbering).....	111
Creep Setting for Magazine.....	101		
Customize Function Copier.....	95	<b>E</b>	
Customize Function Document Server Print.....	96	E-mail Communication Port.....	64
Customize Function Document Server Storage.....	96	E-mail Destination.....	255
		E-mail Reception Interval.....	64
<b>D</b>		E-mail Storage in Server.....	64
Data Format.....	212	Edge to Edge Print.....	207
Date Stamp.....	109	Edit.....	100
DDNS Configuration.....	58	Effective Protocol.....	58
Default Printer Language.....	208	Enable H.323.....	143
Default User Name / Password (Send).....	65	Enable SIP.....	143
Delete All Files in Document Server.....	74	Energy Saver Timer.....	54
Delete All Stored Print Jobs.....	204	Erase All Memory.....	75
Delete All Temporary Print Jobs.....	204	Erase Border Width.....	101
Delete Scanner Journal.....	216	Erase Center Width.....	101
Deleting a Group.....	286	Erase Original Shadow in Combine.....	101
Deleting a Group Within Another Group.....	284	Error Log.....	201
Deleting a Registered Name.....	229	Ethernet Speed.....	59
Deleting a scan size.....	153	Extend A4 Width.....	211
Deleting a Special Sender.....	185	Extended Security.....	74
Deleting a User Code.....	234		
Deleting an E-mail Destination.....	258	<b>F</b>	
Deleting Fax Information.....	157	Facsimile Auto Reset Timer.....	55
Deleting Information Boxes.....	193	Fax Destination.....	240, 242
Deleting Personal Boxes.....	190	Fax E-mail Account.....	66
Deleting Transfer Boxes.....	198	Fax number.....	240
Density / (Background Numbering).....	106	File Transfer.....	62
Designation Sheet 1 Tray.....	51	Firmware Version.....	75
Designation Sheet 2 Tray.....	51	Fixed USB Port.....	76
Destination List Display Priority.....	215	Folder Transfer Result Report.....	139
Display / Clear / Print Counter per User.....	73	Font.....	112
Display / Print Counter.....	72	Font / (Date Stamp).....	109
Display Panel.....	11	Font / (Page Numbering).....	110
Displaying Names Registered in a Group.....	282	Font Number.....	210

Font Pitch.....	210
Font Source.....	210
Form Lines.....	210
Format / (Date Stamp).....	109
Forwarding.....	136, 158, 175, 179
Forwarding Mark.....	161
Front Cover Copy in Combine.....	101
Front Cover Sheet Tray.....	50
Front Margin Left / Right.....	100
Front Margin Top / Bottom.....	100
Function Priority.....	40
Function Reset Timer.....	40

## G

General Features.....	93
General Features/System Settings.....	39
General Settings.....	129, 215

## H

H.323 Settings.....	143
Hex Dump.....	201
High Compression PDF Level.....	219
Host Interface.....	209
Host Name.....	60

## I

I/O Buffer.....	209
I/O Timeout.....	209
Image Repeat Separation Line.....	102
Initial Print Job List.....	205
Initial Settings.....	141
Inkjet Output Type.....	117
Input/Output.....	114
Inquiry.....	297
Insert Additional E-mail Info.....	220
Insert Separation Sheet.....	115
Interface Settings.....	57
Interleave Print.....	40
Internet Fax Settings.....	142
IP-Fax Destination.....	248
IPSec.....	58
IPv4 Gateway Address.....	57
IPv6 Gateway Address.....	57
IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration.....	57

## J

Job End Call.....	95
Job Separation.....	205

## K

Key Repeat.....	42
-----------------	----

## L

LDAP Authentication.....	292
LDAP Search.....	75
Letterhead Setting.....	115, 207
List / Test Print.....	201
List / Test Print Lock.....	204

## M

Machine Data Encryption Settings.....	76
Machine IPv4 Address.....	57
Machine IPv6 Address.....	57
Machine Name.....	60
Maintenance.....	204, 295
Managing names in the Address Book.....	224
Managing users and machine usage.....	225
Max. Copy Quantity.....	94
Max. E-mail Size.....	133, 219
Max. Reception E-mail Size.....	64
Memory Full Auto Scan Restart.....	114
Memory Lock.....	175, 182
Memory Lock Reception.....	139
Memory Overflow.....	205
Memory Usage.....	206
Menu List.....	201
Multiple Lists.....	201

## N

NCP Delivery Protocol.....	58
Network.....	57
Network Security Level.....	75
No. of Digits for Single Page Files.....	220
Number of Scanner Resends.....	66
NW Frame Type.....	58

## O

On Hook Mode Release Time.....	131
Orientation.....	210

Orientation Booklet, Magazine.....	102	Preset Stamp.....	106
Original Orientation in Duplex Mode.....	94	Preventing unauthorized user access to shared folders from the machine.....	225
Original Photo Type Priority.....	93	Print & Delete Scanner Journal.....	215
Original Type Display.....	93	Print 2 Sided.....	175, 181
Original Type Priority.....	93	Print Address Book Destination List.....	71
Output Copier.....	40	Print Backup Compression.....	76
Output Document Server.....	41	Print Backup Default Format.....	76
Output Facsimile.....	41	Print Backup Default Resolution.....	76
Output Printer.....	41	Print Backup Delete All Files.....	75
Output tray settings.....	43	Print Error Report.....	205
<b>P</b>		Print List.....	60
Page Numbering.....	110	Print Priority.....	40
Page Numbering in Combine (Page Numbering) ..	111	Print Reception Time.....	137
Page Numbering Initial Letter.....	112	Print Scanner Journal.....	216
Page Size.....	207	Printer Auto Reset Timer.....	55
Panel key Sound.....	39	Printer Bypass Paper Size.....	44
Panel Off Timer.....	54	Printer Language.....	207
Paper Display.....	94	Printing the Box List.....	199
Paper Tray.....	176	Printing the configuration page.....	202
Paper Tray per Sender.....	182	Printing the Counter for All Users.....	237
Paper Tray Priority Copier.....	44	Printing the Counter for Each User.....	236
Paper Tray Priority Facsimile.....	44	Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message.....	65
Paper Tray Priority Printer (printer).....	44	Program / Change / Delete Gateway.....	144
Paper Tray.....	138	Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server.....	74
Paper Type.....	48	Program / Change / Delete Realm.....	75
Paper Type Bypass Tray.....	47	Program / Change / Delete Scan Size.....	132, 152
Paper Type Detect.....	51	Program / Change / Delete Standard Message.....	134
Paper Type LCT.....	48, 49	Program / Change / Delete User Text.....	39
Parameter Setting.....	141	Program / Change Administrator.....	74
Parameter Setting Print List.....	141	Program Closed Network Code.....	141
Parameter Settings.....	163	Program Fax Information.....	143
PCL Configuration / Font Page.....	201	Program Memory Lock ID.....	142
PCL Menu.....	210	Program Special Sender.....	136
PDF Configuration / Font Page.....	201	Program Special Sender Print List.....	136
PDF Group Password.....	213	Program/Delete Stamp / (User Stamp).....	108
PDF Menu.....	213	Programming an End Receiver.....	158
Permit SNMPv3 Communication.....	60	Programming Initial Set Up of a Special Sender.....	182
Permit SSL / TLS Communication.....	60	Programming the LDAP server.....	77
Ping Command.....	59	Programming the Realm.....	83
Point Size.....	210		
POP before SMTP.....	63		
POP3 / IMAP4 Settings.....	63		



Programming/Changing Information Boxes.....	191
Programming/Changing Personal Boxes.....	186
Programming/Changing Special Senders.....	176
Programming/Changing Transfer Boxes.....	194
PS Configuration / Font Page.....	201
PS Menu.....	212
Punch Type.....	115

## Q

Quick Operation Key (1-3).....	129
Quitting the forwarding function.....	161

## R

Ratio for Create Margin.....	99
Reception File Print Qty.....	178
Reception File Print Quantity.....	137, 174
Reception File Setting.....	136, 147
Reception Protocol.....	63
Reception Report e-mail.....	148
Reception Settings.....	136
Reduce/Enlarge Ratio Priority.....	99
Registering a Fax Destination.....	242
Registering a Group.....	278
Registering a Protection Code.....	288
Registering a Protection Code to a Group User.....	289
Registering a Protection Code to a Single User.....	288
Registering a User Code.....	231
Registering an E-mail Destination.....	255
Registering an FTP Folder.....	267
Registering an SMB Folder.....	260
Registering Fax Information.....	154, 155
Registering Folders.....	260
Registering Names.....	227
Registering Names to a Group.....	278
Registering SMTP and LDAP Authentication.....	291
Removing a Name from a Group.....	283
Reproduction Ratio.....	98
Reserved Job Waiting Time.....	206
Resolution.....	211, 212, 213
Rotate by 180 Degrees.....	205
Rotate Sort Auto Paper Continue.....	114

## S

SADF Auto Reset.....	114
Scan Settings.....	132, 217
Scanner Auto Reset Timer.....	55
Scanner Resend Interval Time.....	66
Search Destination.....	130, 215
Select Dial / Push Phone.....	142
Send Settings.....	133, 219
Sending e-mail by Quick Dial.....	225
Sending fax by Quick Dial.....	224
Sending scanned files to a shared folder directly... .....	225
Separation Line in Combine.....	104
Separation Sheet Tray.....	51
Set Date.....	55
Set Time.....	55
Shortcut Reduce/Enlarge.....	98
Simplified Screen Finishing Types.....	116
SIP Settings.....	143
Size.....	112
Size (Background Numbering).....	106
Size / (Date Stamp).....	109
Size / (Page Numbering).....	111
Slip Sheet Tray.....	50
SMB Computer Name.....	59
SMB Work Group.....	59
SMTP Authentication.....	62, 291
SMTP Reception File Delivery Settings.....	149
SMTP RX File Delivery Settings.....	137
SMTP Server.....	62
Special Senders to Treat Differently.....	173
Specify Tray for Lines.....	138
Spool Image.....	206
Stamp.....	106
Stamp Color.....	106, 108, 109, 112
Stamp Format / (Page Numbering).....	110
Stamp Format / (Preset Stamp).....	106
Stamp Format 1-4 / (User Stamp).....	108
Stamp Language / (Preset Stamp).....	106
Stamp Position (Page Numbering).....	111
Stamp Position on Designating Page (Page Numbering).....	111
Stamp Priority.....	106

Stamp Setting.....	112
Stamp Setting / (Date Stamp).....	110
Stamp Text.....	112
Staple Position.....	115
Stored File E-mail Method.....	220
Stored Reception File User Setting.....	136
Sub Paper Size.....	207
Superimpose.....	112
Superimpose (Page Numbering).....	112
Superimpose / (Date Stamp).....	109
Switch Original Counter Display.....	95
Switch Reception Mode.....	136
Switch Title.....	130, 215
Switch to Batch.....	114
Symbol Set.....	211
System.....	205
System Auto Reset Timer.....	54
System Settings on Main and Sub-machines.....	86
System Settings/General Features.....	39
System Status/Job List Display Time.....	42

## T

Time Interval between Printing Jobs.....	42
Timer Settings.....	54
To change the fax number.....	244
To change the line.....	244
To change the SEP Code.....	245
To change the SUB Code.....	245
To locate the NCP folder manually.....	273
To locate the NCP folder using Browse Network... .....	274
To locate the SMB folder manually.....	262
To locate the SMB folder using Browse Network... .....	263
To select the fax header.....	246
To set label insertion.....	246
To set the International TX Mode.....	245
Transfer Log Setting.....	75
Tray Paper Settings.....	44
Tray Paper Size Interposer Lower Tray.....	46
Tray Paper Size Interposer Upper Tray.....	46
Tray Paper Size LCT.....	45
Tray Paper Size Tray 2.....	45
Tray Paper Size Tray 3.....	45

Tray Switching.....	208
TWAIN Standby Time.....	215

## U

User Authentication Management.....	73
User Stamp.....	108
Using a Fax Destination as a sender.....	244
Using FTP to Connect.....	266
Using NCP to Connect.....	271
Using SMB to Connect.....	260

## W

Wait Time for Next Orig. Exposure Glass.....	217
Wait Time for Next Original(s) SADF.....	217
Warm-Up Beeper.....	40
Weekly Timer.....	56
Weekly Timer Code.....	55
WINS Configuration.....	58

## Z

Z-fold Position.....	42
----------------------	----

## Trademarks

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Server®, and Windows Vista® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe, Acrobat, Acrobat Reader, PostScript, and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

NetWare is a registered trademark of Novell, Inc.

Monotype is a registered trademark of Monotype Imaging, Inc.

PCL® is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Apple, AppleTalk, EtherTalk, Macintosh and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

The proper names of the Windows operating systems are as follows:

\* The product names of Windows 2000 are as follows:

- Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional
- Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Server
- Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Advanced Server

\* The product names of Windows XP are as follows:

- Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional
- Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition
- Microsoft® Windows® XP Media Center Edition
- Microsoft® Windows® XP Tablet PC Edition

\* The product names of Windows Vista are as follows:

- Microsoft® Windows Vista® Ultimate
- Microsoft® Windows Vista® Enterprise
- Microsoft® Windows Vista® Business
- Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Premium
- Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Basic

\* The product names of Windows Server 2003 are as follows:

- Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Standard Edition
- Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Enterprise Edition
- Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Web Edition
- Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Datacenter Edition

\* The product names of Windows Server 2008 are as follows:

- Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard
- Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise
- Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Datacenter

